I am happy that CPWD has brought out this revised edition of the General Specifications for Electrical Works (Part I Internal), 2005. The previous editions were brought out in 1972 and 1994. This revised specifications reflect the latest technological practice and trends prevalent in electrical technology applied to Electrical Installations of buildings. The Electrical Contents of the present day modern buildings have become very complex, which require very reliable, safe, uninterrupted Power Supply backed by standby systems, UPS and connected switchgear. The present edition addresses such complex requirements. I am sure that this edition would be very useful not only to the engineers of CPWD, but also to other government departments and undertakings all over India who follow CPWD Specifications in their works.

I acknowledge the efforts made by Er. J.K. Choudhury, Chief Engineer (Electrical) who has drafted this Specifications based on directions and deliberations of a number of Specification Committee Meetings starting from October 2002, where all the connected issues were discussed in detail so as to make the present Specification technically update, modern and user friendly. I acknowledge the efforts put in by the Members of the Specification Committee and particularly the contribution of Shri-N. Nagarajan, CE (E) DR, Convener of Specification Committee, in organizing deliberations of the Specification Committee.

Er. B. Majumdar

Place : New Delhi
Dated : 5th April, 2005

Director General of Works,
CPWD, Nirman Bhawan, New Delhi-110011
1. N. Nagarajan, CE (E) DR  
   Convener
2. J.K. Choudhury, DDG (W)  
   Member
3. S.K. Singhal, CE (E) NR  
   Member
4. S.R. Subramanium, CE (E), NDZ-V  
   Member
5. Chief Technical Examiner or his representative  
   Member
6. A.N. Devikar, SA  
   (Chief Architect, NDR or his representative)  
   Member
7. K.K. Sharma, Seniormost SE (E) in Delhi  
   Member
8. Asim Sinha, Seniormost SE(E) outside Delhi  
   Member
9. R.B. Singh, SE(C) S&S  
   Member
10. C.K. Verma, SE (E) D&D  
    Member
11. Sudhir Kumar, SE (E) S&S  
    Member Secretary
1. The general specifications for Electrical Works were first issued in 1949. In 1956, the Indian Electricity Rules were amended and in 1958 the Indian Standards Institution published a code of practice for Electrical Wiring and fittings in buildings. In view of this, General Specifications for Electrical Works were revised in 1960, the General Specifications were subsequently revised in 1972, which was again revised in 1994 to keep pace with change in BIS Specifications, use of copper wiring and technological trends.

2. Therefore, the following is the sequence of various editions of CPWD Specifications for Electrical Works (Internal)
   - 1949
   - 1960
   - 1972
   - 1994
   - 2005 (Present edition)

3. This edition aims to incorporate latest technological trends and safety measures to ensure that an Electrical Installation remain modern, technologically update and user friendly.

4. The highlights of the present editions are:
   - New chapters have been devoted for Planning of Electrical Installation, Electrical Power Distribution, Trunking Cable Management System, Safety Procedure, Fire Hazards, Energy Conservation, Preventive Maintenance.
   - Deletion of wooden casing and capping, Rewirable Fuse Switch Boards.
   - Addition of a number of technical information tables and drawings to serve as self-contained general guidelines.
5. It is appreciated that a uniform standard cannot be rigidly adhered to for all variety of installations in different localities, but it is hoped that these General Specifications would provide a general basis, and small variations required to suit local conditions can be catered for specific works by the Superintending Engineers concerned. Care should, however, be taken, as far as possible, not to over-ride the basic provisions of these General Specifications for Electrical Works, 2005.

6. Errors or omissions, and suggestions for improvement, if any, may kindly be brought to the notice of the Superintending Engineer (E) S&S, Office of the Chief Engineer (E) DR, CPWD, New Delhi-110001.

Er. N. Nagarajan
CE (E) DR
CPWD, Vidyut Bhawan,
New Delhi-110001
1. Wiring -
   i. Aluminium wiring deleted
   ii. Only Copper Conductor Cable
   iii. Insulation improved to FRLS
   iv. Strict Colour Coding
   v. Neutral and Earth wire to come to Switch Box

2. Switches:- Only modular type switches and socket out lets to be provided for better quality and service.

3. Loop Earthing Wire:- In place of Bare Copper Wire, green/yellow insulated copper wire is to be used.

4. Loop Earthing of all fans and fittings for safety.

5. DBs :- MCB/HRC type DBs only, pre-wired type for better service and reducing fire hazard.

6. Telephone/TV wiring/Cabling :- All colonies, quarters and buildings to be provided with telephone wiring/TV cabling for which provision to be kept in preliminary estimate.

7. Obsolete items like casing capping, Industrial/hinged type Switch Boards, Rewirable fuses deleted.

8. New specification for rising main, bus ducting, LT Panel, Pre-wired DBs for better quality.

9. Emphasise on inter-disciplinary coordination between user, civil, electrical, architecture and horticulture to have efficient building.

10. New Chapters on :-
    i. Planning
    ii. Cable Management
iii. Fire Hazards  
iv. Energy Conservation  
v. Preventive Maintenance  

11. Captive DG Set for both residential/non-residential building to take care of essential loads.  
12. Stair case lighting as extension of road lighting for better security.  
13. Meter Board not to be located under stair case of residential quarters for better safety.  
14. Relevant tables, charts, diagrams have been added to facilitate planning.  
15. The main intention of revising the specification is for technological updating of the specifications. The revised specification takes into account latest technology available in the country. The main emphasis is on:-  
   i. Proper Planning  
   ii. Design  
   iii. Quality materials and equipments  
   iv. Proper supervision  
   v. Reliable, Safe Installation  
   vi. Coordination with other services.  
   vii. Proper maintenance with emphasis on preventive maintenance  

I am grateful to the Specification Committee Members, who, on various committee deliberations have given a thrust for incorporating latest technology to achieve better quality and service to the users.  

Er. J.K. Choudhury  
CE (E) BFLZ  
CPWD, Vidyut Bhawan  
New Delhi-110001
I am grateful to Er. M.M.L. Chhibba, Retd. Executive Engineer (E), CPWD for complete typing, compilation, editing, collection of technical details, preparation of drawings etc. Without his help this specification could not have taken the present shape.

_Er. J.K. Choudhury_
_CE(E) BFLZ_
_CPWD, Vidhyut Bhawan,_
_New Delhi-110001_
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>General Commercial/Technical</td>
<td>1 – 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Planning of Electrical Installation</td>
<td>10 – 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Metallic Conduit Wiring System</td>
<td>37 – 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Non-metallic Conduit Wiring System</td>
<td>46 – 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Trunking Cable Management</td>
<td>52 – 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>MV Panel/Distribution Board/Rising Main/Bus Trunking and Overhead Bus bar System</td>
<td>57 – 71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Earthing</td>
<td>72 – 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Protection of Building against Lightning</td>
<td>79 – 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Safety Procedure</td>
<td>87 – 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Fire Hazards</td>
<td>91 – 92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Energy Conservation</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>94 – 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Painting</td>
<td>100 – 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Testing of Installation</td>
<td>102 – 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>A – Terminology</td>
<td>106 – 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>B – Conventional Signs &amp; Symbols</td>
<td>109 – 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii)</td>
<td>C – Important Clauses of IE Rules, 1956</td>
<td>112 – 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv)</td>
<td>D – Important Indian Standards</td>
<td>114 – 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v)</td>
<td>E – Form of Completion Certification</td>
<td>125 – 127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi)</td>
<td>F – Earthing</td>
<td>128 – 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vii)</td>
<td>G – Guidelines for selection and Application of RCCBs (RCDs)</td>
<td>135 – 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(viii)</td>
<td>H – Principles of Protection of Building against lightning</td>
<td>140 – 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ix)</td>
<td>I – Average number of thunderstorm Days in the year</td>
<td>146 – 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>J – Weighting factor for overall Assessment of risk for lightning Protection system</td>
<td>148 – 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(xi)</td>
<td>K – Sample calculation of need for Protection with a lightning Protection system</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Tables Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. UG Cable Size Selection Chart</td>
<td>152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Current rating of 1.1 KV grade Cable</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Short circuit rating for XLPE Cable</td>
<td>154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Tripping characteristics of MCBs</td>
<td>155</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Duty category of switches</td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Class of insulation</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Class of fire</td>
<td>158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Degree of protection</td>
<td>159 - 160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Selection of luminaries</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Capacitor selection chart</td>
<td>162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Recommended values of illumination</td>
<td>163 - 166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Expected Useful life of Electrical Installation / Equipment</td>
<td>167 - 169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Basic T&amp;P requirements of maintenance unit</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>19. Figures Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Basic Road lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Feeder pillar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Typical schematic diagram for power Distribution from sub-station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Typical wiring diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Fan clamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Circular box type fan clamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Typical meter board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Typical cubicle panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Pre-wired MCB DB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Rising main power distribution system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Pipe earthing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Plate earthing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Earth testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Earthing concept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Earthing schematic for Internal EI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 20. Details references to clauses                                               | i–ix |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

| 21. Space for electrical & mechanical services in buildings                     | Companion |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------| Copy |
| (Approved by 38th Specification Committee, Oct-2002)                           |

CHAPTER -1

GENERAL COMMERCIAL / TECHNICAL

1.1 Scope:

i) Electricity has become the lifeline of Modern society. Homes, Offices, Industry, Schools, Hospitals, Transportation, Communication, Road Lighting, Markets all depend on reliable Electric Supply. Life comes to a standstill without electricity. Electricity has become an integral and inevitable part of every body’s life.

It is also necessary to remember that electricity becomes destructive and dangerous, if not handled with care, safety conforming to laid down safety standards and norms. In case of building fires, which often destroy property and lives causing sufferings to the affected people, the first culprit is often supposed to be ‘Electric Short Circuit’.

In the above context, the general specification for electrical works (Internal) aims to lay down general guidelines to ensure safe, efficient, reliable and economical use of electricity.

ii) While these Specifications serve as general guidelines, appropriate technical sanctioning authority can depart from such guidelines to meet the particular requirements of any work or for other technical reasons.

iii) This Chapter covers the general commercial and technical requirements applicable to works contract for execution of Internal Electrical Installation works.

iv) These general Specifications are subject to revision from time to time.

1.2 Related Documents:

Each work has its own particular requirements. Therefore, in addition to the General Specifications, governing BIS, I.E. Rules, Standard Contract Conditions etc. there would be necessity of Additional conditions/Specifications for a particular work. In case of any discrepancy such additional conditions/specifications will override these General Specifications.
1.3 **Terminology:**

1.3.1 The definition of terms shall be in accordance with IS: 732-1989 (Indian Standard Code of Practice for Electrical Wiring), except for the definitions of point, circuit, and submain wiring, which are defined in this specification. Some of the commonly used terms are indicated in Appendix-A.

1.3.2 The conventional signs and symbols for technical work shall be as shown in Appendix-B.

1.4 **Submission of Tenders:**

1.4.1 The tender shall be submitted complete with the following:-

(i) Complete tender documents as purchased from CPWD duly filled in and signed. The price part of the tender shall be indicated only on the tender schedule of work.

(ii) Earnest Money deposit in one of the specified forms.

(iii) Any other supplementary details required for the evaluation of the tenders such as drawings, technical literature/catalogues, data etc.

1.4.2 Where two part tendering system is proposed to be adopted in any particular work, the procedure for submission and opening of tenders shall be indicated in tender documents for that work.

1.5 **Rates:**

15.1 The work shall be treated as on works contract basis and the rates tendered shall be for complete items of work (except the materials, if any, stipulated for supply by the department) inclusive of all taxes (including works contract tax, if any), duties, and levies etc. and all charges for items contingent to the work, such as, packing, forwarding, insurance, freight and delivery at site for the materials to the supplied by the contractor, watch and ward of all materials (including those, if any, supplied by the department) for the work at site etc.

15.2 Prices quoted shall be firm. Price adjustments shall however be governed by Clause 10C/10cc of the Conditions of Contract given in form CPWD 7 or 8 of the tender documents, for works executed under these forms. All relevant documents shall be produced by the contractor to the Engineer-in-charge, whenever called upon by him to do so, for working out such adjustments in rates.
Taxes and Duties:

1.6.1 Being an indivisible works contract, Sales Tax, Excise Duty etc. are not payable separately.

1.6.2 The works contract tax shall be deducted from the bills of the contractor as applicable in the State in which the work is carried out, at the time of payments.

1.6.3 Octroi shall not be paid separately for the materials supplied by the Contractor, but the Department, on demand, can furnish octroi exemption certificate. However, the Department is not liable to reimburse the octroi duty in case the concerned authorities do not honor such exemption certificates.

1.7 Mobilization Advance:

No mobilization advance shall be paid for the work, unless otherwise stipulated in tender papers for any individual works.

1.8 Completeness of Tender:

All sundry fittings, assemblies, accessories, hardware items, foundation bolts, termination lugs for electrical connections as required, and all other sundry items which are useful and necessary for proper assembly and efficient working of the various components of the work shall be deemed to have been included in the tender, whether such items are specifically mentioned in the tender documents or not.

1.9 Works to be arranged by the Department:

Unless and otherwise specified in the tender documents, the following works shall be arranged by the Department:

(i) Storage space for all equipments, components and materials for the work.
(ii) Supply of materials to the contractor as stipulated in the tender documents.

1.10 Works to be done by the Contractor:

Unless and otherwise mentioned in the tender documents, the following works shall be done by the contractor, and therefore their cost shall be deemed to be included in their tendered cost:

(i) Foundations for equipments and components where required, including foundations bolts.
(ii) Cutting and making good all damages caused during installation and restoring the same to their original finish.

(iii) Sealing of all floor openings provided by him for pipes and cables, from fire safety point of view, after laying of the same.

(iv) Painting at site of all exposed metal surfaces of the installation other than pre-painted items like fittings, fans, switchgear/distribution gear items, cubicle switchboard etc. Damages to finished surfaces of these items while handling and erection, shall however be rectified to the satisfaction of the Engineer-in-charge.

(v) Testing and commissioning of completed installation.

1.11 Storage and Custody of Materials:

Suitable and lockable storage accommodation shall be provided by the Department free of cost to the contractor. However, the watch and ward of the stores and their safe custody shall be his responsibility till the final taking over of the installation by the Department.

1.12 Electric Power Supply and Water Supply:

Unless and otherwise specified, power supply and water supply will be arranged by the Contractor at the site for installation purpose.

However, for testing purpose, Electricity Supply will be made available free of cost to the Contractor.

Contractor will take due care to ensure safety of Electrical installation during execution of work.

1.13 Tools for handling and erection:

All tools and tackles required for handling of equipments and materials at site of work as well as for their assembly and erection and also necessary test instruments shall be the responsibility of the contractor.

1.14 Payment Terms:

1.14.1 Unless otherwise specified in the additional conditions of the contract, the payment shall be made as per the relevant clauses of form PWD 7/8 forming a part of the tender documents.

1.14.2 Security deposit shall be deducted from each running bill and the final bill to the extent of 10% of the gross amount payable subject to the maximum limit specified. The earnest money deposit shall be adjusted against this security deposit. The security deposit shall be released on the expiry of guarantee/maintenance period stipulated in the contract.
However, the contractor can furnish a bank guarantee in the specified format from a schedule bank for the full value of the security deposit, in which event no recovery shall be made towards security deposit from his bills. The bank guarantee shall be kept valid till the expiry of the above guarantee/maintenance period.

1.15 Co-ordination with other agencies:

The contractor shall co-ordinate with all other agencies involved in the building work so that the building work is not hampered due to delay in his work. Recessed conduit and other works, which directly affect the progress of building work, should be given priority.

1.16 Care of Buildings:

Care shall be taken by the contractor to avoid damage to the building during execution of his part of the work. He shall be responsible for repairing all damages and restoring the same to their original finish at his cost. He shall also remove at his costs all unwanted and waste materials arising out of his work from the site.

1.17 Structural Alterations to Buildings:

(i) No structural member in the building shall be damaged/altered, without prior approval from the competent authority through the Engineer-in-charge.

(ii) Structural provisions like openings, cutouts, if any, provided by the department for the work, shall be used. Where these require modifications, or where fresh provisions are required to be made, such contingent works shall be carried out by the contractor at his cost.

(iii) All such openings in floors provided by the Department shall be closed by the contractor after installing the cables/conduits/rising mains etc. as the case may be, by any suitable means as approved by the Engineer-in-charge without any extra payment.

(iv) All chases required in connection with the electrical works shall be provided and filled by the contractor at his own cost to the original architectural finish of the buildings.

1.18 Addition to an installation:

Any addition temporary or permanent to the existing electrical installation shall not be made without a properly worked out scheme/design by a qualified Electrical Engineer to ensure that such addition does not lead to overloading, safety violation of the existing system.
1.19 Work in occupied buildings:

(i) When work is executed in occupied buildings, there would be minimum of inconvenience to the occupants. The work shall be programmed in consultation with the Engineer-in-charge and the occupying department. If so required, the work may have to be done even before and after office hours.

(ii) The contractor shall be responsible to abide by the regulations or restrictions set in regard to entry into, and movement within the premises.

(iii) The Contractor shall not tamper with any of the existing installations including their switching operations or connections there to without specific approval from the Engineer-in-charge.

1.20 Drawings:

(i) The work shall be carried out in accordance with the drawings enclosed with the tender documents and also in accordance with modification thereto from time to time as approved by the Engineer-in-charge.

(ii) All wiring diagrams shall be deemed to be 'Drawings' within the meaning of the term as used in Clause 11 of the Conditions of Contract (PWD 7 or PWD 8). They shall indicate the main switch board, the distribution boards (with circuit numbers controlled by them), the runs of various mains and sub mains and the position of all points with their controls.

(iii) All circuits shall be indicated and numbered in the wiring diagram and the points shall be given the same number as the circuit to which they are electrically connected.

1.21 Conformity to IE Act, IE Rules, and standards:

1.21.1 All Electrical works shall be carried out in accordance with the provisions of Indian Electricity Act, 1910 and Indian Electricity Rules, 1956 amended up to date (Date of call of tender unless specified otherwise). List of Rules of particular importance to Electrical Installations under these General Specifications is given in Appendix C for reference.

1.22 General requirements of components:

1.22.1 Quality of materials:
All materials and equipments supplied by the contractor shall be new. They shall be of such design, size and materials as to satisfactorily function under the rated conditions of operation and to withstand the environmental conditions at site.
1.22.2 Inspection of materials and equipments:

a) Materials and equipments to be used in the work shall be inspected by the Departmental officers. Such inspection will be of following categories:

i. Inspection of materials/equipments to be witnessed at the Manufacturer’s premises in accordance with relevant BIS/Agreement Inspection Procedure.

ii. To receive materials at site with Manufacturer’s Test Certificate(s).

iii. To inspect materials at the Authorized Dealer’s Godowns to ensure delivery of genuine materials at site.

iv. To receive materials after physical inspection at site.

b) The Departmental officers will take adequate care to ensure that only tested and genuine materials of proper quality are used in work.

c) Similarly, for fabricated equipments, the contractor will first submit dimensional detailed drawings for approval before fabrication is taken up in the factory. Suitable stage inspection at factory also will be made to ensure proper use of materials, workmanship and quality control.

d) The tender specifications will stipulate the Inspection requirements or their waiver for various materials/equipments including norms of inspection in specific cases.

1.22.3 Ratings of Components:

(a) All components in a wiring installation shall be of appropriate ratings of voltage, current, and frequency, as required at the respective sections of the electrical installation in which they are used.

(b) All conductors, switches and accessories shall be of such size as to be capable of carrying the maximum current, which will normally flow through them, without their respective ratings being exceeded.

1.22.4 Conformity to standards:

(a) All components shall conform to relevant Indian Standard Specifications, wherever existing. Materials with ISI certification mark shall be preferred.

(b) A broad list of relevant Indian Standards is given in Appendix D. These Indian Standards, including amendments or revisions thereof up to the date of tender acceptance, shall be applicable in the respective contracts.
1.22.5 **Interchangeability:**
Similar parts of all switches, lamp holders, distribution fuse boards, switch gears, ceiling roses, brackets, pendants, fans and all other fittings of the same type shall be interchangeable in each installation.

1.23 **Workmanship:**

1.23.1 Good workmanship is an essential requirement to be complied with. The entire work of manufacture/fabrication, assembly and installation shall conform to sound engineering practice.

1.23.2 **Proper supervision/skilled workmen:**
The contractor shall be a licensed electrical contractor of appropriate class suitable for execution of the electrical work. He shall engage suitably skilled/licensed workmen of various categories for execution of work supervised by supervisors/Engineer of appropriate qualification and experience to ensure proper execution of work. They will carry out instructions of Engineer-in-charge and other senior officers of the Department during the progress of work.

1.23.3 **Use of quality materials:**
Only quality materials of reputed make as specified in the tender will be used in work.

1.23.4 **Fabrication in reputed workshop:**
Switch boards and LT panels shall be fabricated in a factory/workshop having modern facilities like quality fabrication, seven tank process, powder/epoxy paint plant, proper testing facilities, manned by qualified technical personnel.

The tender shall specify some quality makes of fabricators with modern facilities of design, fabrication and testing capable of delivering high quality LT panels and switch boards after testing as per relevant specifications.

1.24 **Testing:**

All tests prescribed in these General Specifications, to be done before, during and after installation, shall be carried out, and the test results shall be submitted to the Engineer-in-charge in prescribed Performa, forming part of the Completion Certificate.
1.25 Commissioning on Completion:

After the work is completed, it shall be ensured that the installation is tested and commissioned.

1.26 Completion Plan and Completion Certificate:

(i) For all works completion certificate after completion of work as given in Appendix-E shall be submitted to the Engineer-in-charge.

(ii) Completion plan drawn to a suitable scale in tracing cloth with ink indicating the following, along with three blue print copies of the same shall also be submitted.

a. General layout of the building.

b. Locations of main switchboard and distribution boards, indicating the circuit numbers controlled by them.

c. Position of all points and their controls.

d. Types of fittings, viz. fluorescent, pendants, brackets, bulk head, fans and exhaust fans etc.

e. Name of work, job number, accepted tender reference, actual date of completion, names of Division/Sub-Division, and name of the firm who executed the work with their signature.

1.27 Guarantee

The installation will be handed over to the Department after necessary testing and commissioning. The installation will be guaranteed against any defective design/workmanship. Similarly, the materials supplied by the contractor will be guaranteed against any manufacturing defect, inferior quality. The guarantee period will be for a period of 12 months from the date of handing over to the Department. Installation/ equipments or components thereof shall be rectified/ repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer-in-charge.
CHAPTER – 2

PLANNING OF ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

2.1 Planning of Electrical Installation:

The design and planning of an Electrical installation involve consideration of all prevailing conditions and is usually guided by the requirement of the consumer. A competent Electrical Engineer should take the responsibility of detailed designing and planning to meet the requirement of various functional needs, efficiency, economy, energy conservation, aesthetics, appropriate technology, safety and avoidance of possible fire hazards. Some of the guiding factors are:

a. Adverse conditions like humidity, high/low ambient temperature, pollution, heat, dust, flame etc. that are likely to affect the installation.
b. Possible presence of inflammable or explosive vapor, gas, liquid.
c. The degree of mechanical and electrical protection necessary.
d. The need of uninterrupted electrical supply, which requires adequate standby system, including generating sets and UPS back up.
e. Flexibility for future modification or extension.
f. Energy cost, which requires proper examination of local electrical tariff.
g. Energy conservation measures.
h. Need of Building management system for efficiency and energy cost saving.
i. Relative cost of various alternative methods.
j. Safety aspects including provision of built in safety measures.
k. Specific measures for avoidance of possible fire hazards.
l. Use of appropriate technology.
m. Quality control based on appropriate design and use of quality materials and equipments.
n. Aesthetics and coordination with Architectural and Structural requirement.
o. Taking into account future growth of load.
p. Need to provide related space/conduits/channels/cables/wire for services like: Communication cables, computer cabling, fire alarm cabling, UPS cabling etc. CCTV/Security system cables etc.
q. Reducing operation and maintenance cost with appropriate use of automation, sensors, remote control, microprocessor control for controlling various electrical and mechanical activities.

r. Providing an efficient power distribution system to meet the various power requirement of equipments like:
Computers.
ACs.
Pumps.
Lifts.
Specific equipments.
Ventilation Plant.
AC Plan. etc.

2.2 Coordination:

2.21 Before Planning is started, coordination and collaboration is needed amongst the following:
Client/user/users of the building/Civil/Structural Engineer/ Architect/Horticulture.

2.22 Based on the specific requirement and projected use of the building, conceptual coordinated detailed planning for the entire building will be finalized. The Electrical portion has to fit into such integrated concept of the building.

2.3 Location and requirement of substation:

2.3.1 Electrical substation may be required for following reasons:

a. When Electric load is in excess of permitted LT supply limit of 'Electrical Supply Authority', which necessitates setting up of substation.

b. When it is desired to have a substation for technical reasons.

2.3.2 Ideal location:

i. The ideal location for an Electric substation for a building or group of buildings would be at the load center and shall be located on the ground floor in a separate building. Such building should have direct access through a motorable road to ensure easy access or removal of equipment. The floor level of the substation or switch room (in case of LT) shall be above the highest flood level of the locality.

ii. In case the substation has to be located within the main building itself
for unavoidable reasons, then it should be located on ground floor with easy access from outside. Location of substation in the basement floors should be avoided as far as possible on account of likely flooding and fire hazard. In case it is unavoidable, then foolproof anti-flooding, measures have to be taken, which includes provision of automatic dewatering pumping and construction of waterproof basement. Such portion (for substation) should be isolated from the rest of basement and should have easy entry and exit arrangement. Also, suitable mechanical ventilation and fire detection/protection system to be provided to conform to B.I.S. requirements and requirements of local fire authority. Only dry type transformers and switchgear to be provided, unless they are installed in a separate service building separated from the main building.

iii. Emergency power supply equipment (such as generating sets) shall not be allowed to be installed above ground floor or below first basement level of building.

iv. Facility for connection from substation to adjoining building to feed emergency load shall be permitted.

2.3.3 Space for Electric substation: Reference may be made to “SPACE FOR ELECTRICAL AND MECHANICAL SERVICES IN BUILDINGS” as approved by 38th Specification Committee, October 2002.

2.3.4 Coordination with local Supply Authority.
The power requirement should be assessed, in consultation with the owner/users, and discussion should be held with the Electricity supply authority to decide on location/space required for Electricity supply equipment/meter and tariff involved.

2.3.5 Provision for future growth of load:
The useful life of the building may be more than 50 years. Experience indicates 5 to 10% growth of Electrical load every year. Therefore, building should have adequate space provision for augmentation of electrical supply and associated distribution network.

2.3.6 Space for Electrical Services “SPACE FOR ELECTRICAL AND MECHANICAL SERVICES IN BUILDINGS” as approved by 38th Specification Committee, October 2002:
The building has to provide for space for various electrical equipments and service. These include:

a. Electrical substation to house HT switchgear, Metering, transformers, LT panels, generating sets, essential LT Panel, Voltage correction devices, UPS, Battery Room, Electrical
switch rooms, vertical shafts for power, communication, fire alarm, UPS, cabling, wet riser, associated doors, cutouts in floors/slabs, cable routes/trenches/ducts, cable entry pipes, etc. space for distribution boards etc.
All such provisions are essential to provide an efficient, safe and aesthetic electrical system for the building.

2.3.7 Location of switch room:
Where it is not necessary to provide a substation, a switch room shall be provided. This shall be preferably near the entrance of the building on the ground floor. This switch room shall receive LT supply for which suitable pipe/trench provision shall be kept for cable entry. Power distribution shall start with suitable number of rising mains (or rising cables) for vertical distribution. A large building will be divided into suitable number of parts, each part served by a rising main. Suitable provision shall be kept for laying cables/bus duct from switch room to feed each rising main.

2.3.8 Distribution of supply and cabling:
A well-designed distribution system will take into account prevailing conditions, various requirement of power so that the installation meets the intended purpose and is safe, and efficient.

2.3.9 System of Supply:
i. All electrical equipments, accessories shall be suitable for voltage and frequency of supply.

ii. Use of low voltage, medium voltage or high voltage system or combination thereof is a matter of expert calculation, judgement, comparative studies, prevailing tariff, for ensuring better quality of electric supply, better operation, control and economy of use of equipments, better safety etc. Use of high voltage supply entails provision of suitable transformer substation, which demands additional cost and space. However, such additional cost may be justified for following reasons:

   a. Advantage in tariff.
   b. More effective earth fault protection.
   c. Elimination of interference with supplies to other consumers permitting use of large size motors etc.
   d. Better control of voltage.

2.3.10 Stand-by Systems:
Whenever reliable power supply is intended, it is essential to plan for stand by systems like:-
i) Incoming supply from two sources.

ii) Minimum 2 Nos. Transformers, so that in case of failure of one transformer, there is a standby.

2.3.11 Planning for peak-Non-peak loads in office buildings:
In a typical office building, peak load is between 10 AM to 5 PM. Holidays and after office hours demand is hardly 5% of peak load. Hence, for such period a smaller capacity transformer may be planned to reduce energy losses on account of ‘Core Loss’ of transformer.

2.4 Quality of Electric Supply:

i. The parameters which decide the quality of Electric supply are:-
   a. Voltage.
   b. Frequency.
   c. Absence of harmful harmonies.
   d. Protection against Surge/Lightning.

ii. Modern buildings use large number electromechanical, electronic devices, which for their proper operation and protection require quality electric supply.

iii. Hence, based on specific needs, suitable additional equipments like voltage correctors, filters, surge protectors, UPS etc. may be provided as an integral part of the electric power system.

2.5 Standby Generator Set:

2.5.1 In the event of mains power failure, it is necessary to provide standby generating sets to meet the requirement of essential power supply, so that the normal working of offices and other institutions, which provide service to the public/users, don’t suffer. The essential power loads are as below:-

a. Residential:
Water supply pump sets.
Lifts.
Fire protection/ Fire fighting system.
Street lighting.
Essential Community needs.

b. Non-residential:
Water supply pump sets.
Lifts.
Fire protection/ Fire fighting system.
Lights and fans.
Exit lights.
Staircase lights etc.
Other requirements like critical air-conditioning, AHUs, essential power outlets, etc.

c. Therefore, it is necessary to provide for essential power supply system consisting of:
   i. Standby DG Sets.
   ii. Essential LT Power panels.
   iii. Essential rising mains.
   iv. Main boards, DB's, essential wiring etc.

2.6 Power factor Management:

i) Low power factor results in higher current resulting in higher voltage drop and system losses. In order to have control over these parameters, power factor of 0.85 to 0.95 to be maintained by the power consumers. Heavy penalty is imposed in case of low power factor.

Percentage reduction of load current and transformer loss due to power factor improvement is given in table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial Power Factor</th>
<th>Power factor improvement</th>
<th>% Reduction in load current</th>
<th>% reduction in transformer losses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ii) Effect of leading power factor:
Leading power factor causes higher voltage; resulting in:

a) Increase in hysteresis and eddy current losses.

b) Transformer may operate in saturated BH curve, resulting in generation of harmonics, which may lead to heating, and failure of capacitor.

iii) Automatic power factor correction capacitor Banks:
Properly designed APFC panels shall be provided to maintain power factor automatically at desired level.
2.7 UPS:-
   a. To meet the requirement of no break power supply for requirements like computer/communication/security needs etc, it may be necessary to provide for centralized/de-centralized UPS system.
   b. In a centralized UP’s system, there will be a third distribution system (besides essential and non-essential power distribution system) consisting of battery room, UPS system, UPS LT Panel, UPS rising main, main boards/DBs wiring etc.
   c. Such a system requires carefully designed power switchgear and distribution system, so that in case of power failure, the essential/UPS loads are connected to their respective sources in a safe and reliable manner.

2.8 Allied Services:
2.8.1 The modern building, besides electric wiring, has to provide for following services:-
   i. Telephone wiring.
   ii. Communication Cabling.
   iii. Computer cabling, networking, dedicated earthing.
   iv. Audiovisual systems.
   v. Security systems.
   vi. Sound re-inforcement.
   vii. Stage lighting.
   viii. External lighting.
   ix. Architectural in-built lighting.
   x. Solar Energy system.
   xi. Photo voltaic power system.
   xii. Other specific lighting services etc.
   xiii. Building management system.

2.8.2 It is for the electrical planning engineer to coordinate provision of these services in consultation with the user, Architect, structural engineer and specialized agencies.

2.8.3 Also it is necessary to provide for space/shafts/routes and in-built provisions for all these services.

2.8.4 The basic guidelines are:-
   a. Each specialized service will be executed without mixing up with other services.
   b. Wiring of each service will be taken in its own pipe/channel, except when it is permitted otherwise.
   c. Consultation will be made with reputed specialized firms to provide for space and other in-built provision for such services.
   d. Suitable cat - walk shall be provided as an integral part of the building structure, to provide facility for maintenance of systems provided at higher level.
2.9 Lux Level:

Proper lighting level is to be maintained BIS specifies lux levels required for various applications. Lower lux level reduces efficiency of working. Aged person requires higher lux level. For normal office working a middle-aged man requires 350 lux. A person of 55 to 60 years age may require 500 lux. Proper designing is required for achieving satisfactory lux levels in conformity with BIS. (see Table)

2.10 False ceiling Coordination:

False ceiling electrical layout will be coordinated with the Architect and the Civil Engineer so that reflected drawing provides for symmetrical and aesthetic layout of the following:

- Fans
- Light fittings
- A/C Diffuses
- Fire detectors
- Sprinklers
- Speakers etc.

2.11 Functional areas like Auditorium, conference hall, computer rooms, and library:

Special attention to be paid for functional areas to meet the client’s requirements, and functional requirements in coordination with the Architect and to provide for specialized services like Audio visual system, P.A. System, Sound reinforcement, Stage lighting, Conference system, security needs, etc. It may be noted that provision of such services at a latter stage will not only mar the aesthetics of the building, also will compromise with efficiency of such services for want of proper space etc.

2.12 Areas like Hospitals, Stadia:

Planning of such buildings require high degree of professionalism, for application of latest technology to provide efficient and effective installation.

2.13 Out door Lighting, High Mast Lighting, Road Lighting, Security Lighting, Garden Lighting, Illuminated Fountains:

Present day modern buildings require highly aesthetic lighting making use of a variety of lighting design, themes and fixtures available. For proper aesthetic effect, high level of professional approach is needed based on computer aided design and calculations.
2.14 Street Light poles:

Hot-dipped galvanized poles with integrated in-built control box and lighting brackets is a preferred option to ensure long life of poles and to delay effect of corrosion. The height and spacing of poles should be designed with the aid of computers for ensuring proper lux level. Similarly, the wattage and type of luminaries should be decided based on proper design. Having an external control box fixed to the pole is not a preferred option for aesthetic/technical reasons. If it is decided to go for this option, it is better to go for non-metallic enclosures (like polycarbonate/engineering plastic) with IP: 65 protections, to avoid corrosion effect. Similarly, street light fittings fixed to the wall of the building should be generally avoided. Also for feeder pillars application, enclosures made of non-corrosive materials like fiber glass/engineering plastic manufactured by reputed firm can be used after suitable technical evaluation.

(See fig: 1 for typical road lighting & fig: 2 for typical feeder pillar)
CHAPTER 3

ELECTRIC POWER DISTRIBUTION AND WIRING

3.1 Introduction:

The electric power will be received and distributed in a building, through following means:-

i. Cabling and switchgear to receive power.

ii. The building is divided into convenient number of parts, each part served by a rising main system to distribute power vertically/horizontally.

iii. Power flows from rising main through tap-off box to floor main board to final DBs and then to wiring.

iv. While rising main takes care of general lighting and power outlet load of the building, other loads like lifts, pump sets, AC Plants, other motor loads are fed by independent cables of suitable capacity fed from properly designed essential/non-essential LT panels with suitably designed switchgear having necessary control and safety features.

v. Therefore the distribution/wiring system essentially consists of provision of cables, switchgear, rising main, bus-ducting, earthing, laying of pipes/conduits etc. (in surface or recess) based on proper detailed designing to decide on various sizes/capacities of these components and various controls and safety issues involved, to provide an efficient, reliable, safe and adequate electrical distribution and wiring system.

vi. A typical schematic diagram of power distribution of a building is enclosed. (See Fig. 3)

3.2 System of distribution and wiring:

i. The wiring shall be done from a distribution system through main and/or branch distribution boards. The system design and location of boards will be properly worked out.

ii. Each main distribution board and branch distribution board shall be controlled by an incoming circuit breaker/linked switch with fuse. Each outgoing circuit shall be controlled by a circuit breaker/switch with fuse.

iii. For non-residential buildings, as far as possible, DBs shall be separate for light and power.

iv. Only MCCB/MCB/HRC fuse type DBs shall be used. Rewirable type fuses shall not be used.

v. Three phase DBs shall not be used for final circuit distribution as far as possible.
vi. 'Power' wiring shall be kept separate and distinct from light wiring, from the level of circuits, i.e., beyond the branch distribution boards. Conduits for light/power wiring shall be separate.

vii. Essential/non-essential/UPS distribution each will have a completely independent and separate distribution system starting from the main, switchboard up to final wiring for each system. As for example, conduit carrying non-essential wiring shall not have essential or UPS wiring. Wiring for essential and UPS supply will have their own conduit system. No mixing of wiring is allowed.

viii. Generally, no switchboard will have more than one source of incoming supply. More than one incoming supply will be allowed only at main board with proper safety and interlocking so that only one source can be switched on at a time.

ix. Each MDB/DB/Switch Board will have reasonable spare outgoing ways for future expansion.

x. Balancing of 3-phase circuit shall be done.

3.3 Wiring:

3.3.1 Submain & Circuit wiring:

a. Submain wiring:
Submain wiring shall mean the wiring from one main/distribution switchboard to another.

b. Circuit wiring:
Circuit wiring shall mean the wiring from the distribution board to the 1\textsuperscript{st} tapping point inside the switch box, from where point wiring starts.

3.3.2 Measurement of submain and circuit wiring:

i. Circuit and submain wiring shall be measured on linear basis along the run of the wiring. The measurement shall include all lengths from end to end of conduit or channel as the case may be, exclusive of interconnections inside the switchboard etc. The increase on account of diversion or slackness shall not be included in the measurement.

ii. The length of circuit wiring with two wires shall be measured from the distribution board to the nearest switch box from which the point wiring starts. Looping of switch boxes also will be counted towards circuit wiring, measured along the length of conduit/channel.

iii. When wires of different circuits are grouped in a single conduit/ channel, the same shall be measured on linear basis depending on the actual number and sizes of wires run.

iv. Protective (loop earthing) conductors, which are run along the circuit wiring and the sub main wiring, shall be measured on linear basis and paid for separately.
v. **Note:** Conduit carrying submain will not carry circuit/point wiring. Similarly, conduit carrying circuit wiring will not carry submain/point wiring. Conduit carrying point wiring will not carry submain/circuit wiring.

3.3.3 **Measurement of other wiring work:**
Except as specified above for point wiring, circuit wiring and submain wiring, other types of wiring shall be measured separately on linear basis along the run of wiring depending on the actual number and sizes of wires run.

3.4 **Point wiring:**

3.4.1 **Definition**
A point (other than socket outlet point) shall include all work necessary in complete wiring to the following outlets from the controlling switch or MCB.

a. Ceiling rose or connector (in the case of points for ceiling/exhaust fan points, prewired light fittings, and call bells).

b. Ceiling rose (in case of pendants except stiff pendants).


d. Lamp holder (in the case of goose neck type wall brackets, batten holders and fittings which are not prewired).

3.4.2 **Scope:**
Following shall be deemed to be included in point wiring.

a. Conduit/channel as the case may be, accessories for the same and wiring cables between the switch box and the point outlet, loop protective earthing of each fan/light fixture.

b. All fixing accessories such as clips, screws, Phil plug, rawl plug etc. as required.

c. Metal or PVC switch boxes for control switches, regulators, sockets etc, recessed or surface type, and phenolic laminated sheet covers over the same.

d. Outlet boxes, junction boxes, pull-through boxes etc. but excluding metal boxes if any, provided with switchboards for loose wires/conduit terminations.

e. Any special block required for neatly housing the connector in batten wiring system.

f. Control switch or MCB, as specified.

g. 3 pin or 6 pin socket, ceiling rose or connector as required. (2 pin and 5 pin socket outlet shall not be permitted).

h. Connections to ceiling rose, connector, socket outlet, lamp holder, switch etc.
3.4.3 Measurement

a. Point wiring (other than socket outlet points)
i. Unless and otherwise specified, there shall be no linear measurement for point wiring for light points, fan points, exhaust fan points and call bell points. These shall be measured on unit basis by counting, and classified as laid down in 3.4.4.

3.4.4 Classification:
Points measured under 3.4.3 on unit basis shall be classified as under according to the type of building.

a. Residential buildings:-
i. Group ‘A’, for point wiring for type I, type II and type III residential quarters and hostels.
ii. Group ‘B’, for point wiring for type IV and above type of residential quarters and barracks.

b. Non residential buildings:
Group ‘C’ for all types of non-residential buildings such as offices, hospitals, laboratories, educational institutions, libraries etc.

c. For any other type of building:-
The group under which the points are to be classified shall be decided by the concerned Chief Engineer (Elect.).

3.4.5 Point wiring for socket outlet points:
(i) The light (6A) point and power (16A) point wiring shall be measured on linear basis, from the respective tapping point of live cable, namely, switch box, another socket outlet point, or the sub distribution board as the case may be, up to the socket outlet.
(ii) The metal/PVC box with cover, switch/MCB, socket outlet and other accessories shall be measured and paid as a separate item.

Note: There shall normally be no “on the board” light plug point.
(iii) The power point outlet may be 16A/6 A six pin socket outlet, where so specified in the tender documents.
3.4.6 Group Control point wiring:

i) In the case of points with more than one point controlled by the same switch, such points shall be measured in parts i.e. (a) from the switch to the first point outlet as one point and classified according to 3.4.4, and (b) for the subsequent points, the distance from that outlet to the next one and so on, shall be treated as separate point (s) and classified according to 3.4.4.

ii) No recovery shall be made for non-provision of more than one switch in such cases.

3.4.7 Twin control light point wiring:

(i) A light point controlled by two numbers of two way switches shall be measured as two points from the fitting to the switches on either side and classified according to 3.4.4.

(ii) No recovery shall be made for non-provision of more than one ceiling rose or connector in such cases.

3.4.8 Multiple controlled call bell point wiring:

(i) In the case of call bell points with a single call bell outlet, controlled from more than one place, the points shall be measured in parts i.e. (a) from the call bell outlet to one of the nearest ceiling roses meant for connection to bell push, treated as one point and classified according to 3.4.4 and, (b) from that ceiling rose to the next one and so on, shall be treated as separate point (s) and classified according to 3.4.4.

(ii) No recovery shall be made for non-provision of more than one ceiling rose or connector for connection to call bell in such cases.

3.5 Wiring System:

i) Wiring shall be done only by the looping system. Phase/live conductors shall be looped at the switch box. For point wiring, neutral wire/earth wire looping for the 1st point shall be done in the switch box; and neutral/earth looping of subsequent points will be made from point outlets.

ii) In wiring, no joints in wiring will be permitted any where, except in switch box or point outlets, where jointing of wires will be allowed with use of suitable connector.

iii) The wiring throughout the installation shall be such that there is no break in the neutral wire except in the form of linked switchgear.
iv) Colour coding:-

Following colour coding shall be followed in wiring:-

- **Phase**: Red/Yellow/Blue. (Three phase wiring)
- **Live**: Red (Single phase wiring)
- **Neutral**: Black
- **Earth**: Yellow/Green

v) Termination of circuit into switchboard:-

Circuit will consist of phase/neutral/earth wire. Circuit will terminate in a switchboard (first tapping point, where from point wiring starts) in following manner:-

- Phase wire terminated in phase connector.
- Neutral wire terminated in neutral connector.
- Earth wire terminated in earth connector.

The switchboard will have phase neutral and earth terminal connector blocks to receive phase/neutral/earth wire.

SEE FIG 4.

3.6 Run of wiring:

i. The type of wiring shall be as specified in the tender documents namely, surface conduit/recessed conduit, steel/PVC, channel.

ii. Surface wiring shall run as far as possible along the walls and ceiling, so as to be easily accessible for inspection.

iii. Above false ceiling, in no case, open wiring shall be allowed. Wiring will be done in recessed conduit or surface steel conduit.

iv. In recessed conduit system, routes of conduit will be planned, so that various inspection boxes provided don’t present a shabby look. Such boxes can be provided 5 mm above plaster level, and they can be covered with plaster of paris with marking of junction boxes.

v. Where number of electrical services like electrical wiring, telephone wiring, computer cabling, pass through corridors, it may be proper to plan such service with properly designed aluminium/PVC channels duly covered by a false ceiling, so that subsequently such service can be maintained and additional cables can be provided.

vi. Generally conduits for wiring will not be taken in floor slabs. When it is unavoidable special precaution to be taken to provide floor channels with provision for safety and maintenance. Alternatively false flooring can be provided.

3.7 Passing through walls or floors:

i) When wiring cables are to pass through a wall, these shall be taken through a protection (steel/PVC) pipe or porcelain tube of suitable size such that they pass through in a straight line without twist or cross in them on either end of such holes. The ends of metallic pipe shall be neatly bushed with
3.8 Joints in wiring:
   i) No bare conductor in phase and/or neutral or twisted joints in phase, neutral, and/or protective conductors in wiring shall be permitted.
   ii) There shall be no joints in the through-runs of cables. If the length of final circuit or submain is more than the length of a standard coil, thus necessitating a through joint, such joints shall be made by means of approved mechanical connectors in suitable junction boxes.
   iii) Termination of multistranded conductors shall be done using suitable crimping type thimbles.

3.9 Ratings of outlets:
   (to be adopted for design).
   i) Incandescent lamps in residential and non-residential buildings shall be rated at 60W and 100W respectively.
   ii) Ceiling fans shall be rated at 60W. Exhaust fans, fluorescent tubes, compact fluorescent tubes, HPMV lamps, HPSV lamps etc. shall be rated according to their capacity. Control gear losses shall be also considered as applicable.
   iii) 6A and 16A socket outlet points shall be rated at 100W and 1000W respectively, unless the actual values of loads are specified.

3.10 Capacity of Circuits:
   i) Lighting circuit shall feed light/fan/call bell points. Each circuit shall not have more than 800 Watt connected load or more than 10 points. However, in case of CFL points where load per point may be less, number of points may be suitably increased.
   ii) Power circuit in non-residential building will have only one outlet per circuit.
   iii) Each power circuit in residential building can feed following outlets:
      a) Not more than 2 Nos. 16A outlets.
      b) Not more than 3 Nos. 6A outlets.
      c) Not more than 1 No. 16A and 2 Nos. 6A outlets.
   iv) Load more than 1 KW shall be controlled by suitably rated MCB and cable size shall be decided as per calculations.
   v) Power wiring with Bus trunking:
      It is permitted to meet large-scale power requirement in a hall, or
floor, with use of single phase or 3 phase bus bars running inside a metal enclosure. This will be provided with careful design and use of factory fabricated bus-trunking of reputed make, conforming to relevant BIS standards and with standard accessories like End feed unit, tap off with necessary safety features like over current, short-circuit and earth fault protection. Such trunking will be of specified breaking KA rating.

3.11 Socket outlets:

i. Socket outlets shall be 6A 3 pin, 16 Amp 3 pin or 16/6 Amp 6 pin. 5 pin socket outlets will not be permitted. The third pin shall be connected to earth through protective (loop earthing) conductor, 2 pin or 5 pin sockets shall not be permitted to be used.

ii. Conductors connecting electrical appliances with socket outlets shall be of flexible type with an earthing conductor for connection to the earth terminal of plug and the metallic body of the electrical appliance.

iii. Sockets for the power outlets of rating above 1KW shall be of industrial type with associated plug top and controlling MCB.

iv. Where specified, shutter type (interlocking type) of sockets shall be used.

v. Every socket outlet shall be controlled by a switch or MCB, as specified. The control switch/MCB shall be connected on the ‘live’ side of the line.

vi. 5A/6A and 15A/16A socket outlets shall be installed at the following positions, unless otherwise specified.

   a) Non-residential buildings – 23cm above floor level.
   b) Kitchen – 23 cm above working platform and away from the likely positions of stove and sink.
   c) Bathroom – No socket outlet is permitted for connecting a portable appliance thereto. MCB/Ic switch may be provided above 2 m for fixed appliances, and at least 1 m away from shower.
   d) Rooms in residences – 23 cm above floor level, or any other level in special cases as desired by the Engineer-in-charge.

vii. Unless and otherwise specified, the control switches for the 6A and 16A socket outlets shall be kept along with the socket outlets.

3.12 Cables:

i) Copper conductor cable only will be used for submain/circuit/point wiring.
ii) Minimum size of wiring:
Light Wiring: \( 1.5 \text{ sq.mm.} \)
Power Wiring: \( 4.0 \text{ sq.mm.} \)
Power circuit rated: More than 1 KW, Size as per calculation.

iii) Insulation:
Copper conductor-cable shall be PVC insulated, Fire retardant, low smoke (FRLS) type conforming to BIS Specification.

iv) Multi stranded: Cables are permitted to be used.

3.13 Flexible Cable:

i) Conductor of flexible cables shall be of copper. The cross sectional area of conductor for flexible cable shall be as per design.

ii) Only 3 core flexible cables shall be used for connecting single-phase appliances.

iii) Unless the flexible cables are mechanically protected by armour, or tough rubber, or PVC sheath, these shall not be used in workshops and other places where they are liable to mechanical damage.

iv) Flexible cable connection to bell push from ceiling rose shall be taken through steel conduit/metallic casing and capping.

3.14 Wiring Accessories:

a. Control switches for point:

i) Control switches (single pole switch) carrying not more than 16A shall be modular type. The switch shall be ‘On’ when the knob is down.

ii) Modular type switches of reputed make along with matching mounting boxes, shall be used in non-residential buildings and residential quarters of all types. Modular type sockets, stepped type fan regulators shall be used. All such boxes, switches and accessories shall be of same make of modular switch manufacturer.

iii) It is recommended to provide double pole MCB in proper enclosure as power out let for window type AC units, geysers etc.

b. Switch Box:

i. Switch box shall be hot dip galvanized, factory fabricated. Suitable in size for surface/ recess mounting and suitable in size for accommodating the required number of switches and accessories (where required to be used for applications other then modular switches/ sockets).
ii. Switch box also can be of non-metallic material. The technical sanctioning authority will approve specified makes of reputed quality and specifications.

c. **Switch box covers (for application other than modular type):**
Phenolic laminated sheets of approved shade shall be used for switch box covers. These shall be of 3mm thick synthetic phenolic resin bonded laminated sheet as base material and conforming to grade P-I of IS: 2036-1974.
Note: Specification for switch boxes is covered in the chapters on the various types of wiring.

d. **Ceiling rose:**
   i) A ceiling rose shall not be used on a circuit, the voltage of which normally exceeds 250V.
   ii) Only one flexible cord shall be connected to a ceiling rose. Specially designed ceiling roses shall be used for multiple pendants.
   iii) A ceiling rose shall not embody fuse terminal as an integral part of it.

e. **Lamp holders:**
   i) Lamp holders may be batten, angle, pendant or bracket holder type as required. The holder shall be made of brass and shall be rigid enough to maintain shape on application of a nominal external pressure. There should be sufficient threading for fixing the base to the lamp holder part so that they do not open out during attention to the lamp or shade.
   ii) Lamp holders for use on brackets and the like shall have not less than 1.3 cm nipple, and all those for use with flexible pendant shall be provided with cord grips.
   iii) All lamp holders shall be provided with shade carriers.
   iv) Where center contact Edison Screw lamp holders are used, the outer or screw contact shall be connected to the ‘middle wire’, or the neutral conductor of the circuit.

f. **Fittings:**
**Types:**
The type of fittings shall be as specified in tender documents.

**Indoor type fittings:**
   i) Where conductors are required to be drawn through tube or channel leading to the fitting, the tube or channel must be free from sharp angles or projecting edge, and of such size as will enable them to be wired with the conductors used for the final circuit without removing the braiding or sheathing. As far as possible all such tubes or channels
should be of sufficient size to permit looping back.

ii) Wires used within prewired fittings shall be flexible with PVC insulation and 14/0.193 mm (minimum) copper conductors. The leads shall be terminated on built-in-terminal block, ceiling rose or connector, as required.

iii) Fittings using discharge lamps shall be complete with power factor correction capacitors, either integrally or externally. An earth terminal with suitable marking shall be provided for each fitting for discharge lamps.

iv) Fittings shall be installed such that the lamp is at a height of 2.4m above floor level, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer-in-charge.

v) Fittings made of CRCA shall be phosphatized and powder/epoxy painted. For coastal areas and humid areas like toilets, kitchen, for prolonging the life of such fittings, corrosion free materials like engineering plastic, aluminium, stainless steel etc. should be used.

**Outdoor fittings:**

Outdoor fittings shall have suitable IP protection. It is preferable that street light fittings are of cast aluminium body of IP65, for reducing recurring maintenance cost and improved performance. Where required IP 66 fittings also can be provided for reducing maintenance frequency and cost.

Other fittings, which are not available with tested IP 65/54 protection, can be properly fabricated with weatherproof features, proper gasketing etc. As far as possible corrosion free material like cast aluminium, stainless steel, engineering plastics may be used for fabrication of such fittings, to prolong life such fittings. There should not be any exposed wiring in such outdoor fittings.

3.15 **Attachment of fittings and accessories:**

a. **Conduit wiring system:**

i) All accessories like switches, socket outlets, call bell pushes and regulators shall be fixed in flush pattern inside the switch/regulator boxes. Accessories like ceiling roses, brackets, batten holders etc. shall be fixed on outlet boxes. The fan regulators may also be fixed on outlet boxes, if so directed by the Engineer-in-charge.

ii) Aluminium alloy or cadmium plated iron screws shall be used to fix the accessories to their bases.

iii) The switch box/regulator box shall normally be mounted with their bottom 1.25m from floor level, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer-in-charge.
b. Fixing to walls and ceiling:
   i. Wooden plugs for fixing to wall/ceiling will not be allowed. Fixing will be done with the help of PVC sleeves/Rowel plugs/dash fasteners as required.
   ii. Drilling of holes shall be done by drilling machines only. No manual drilling of hole will be allowed.

3.16 Fans, Regulators and Clamps:

a. Ceiling Fans:
   i) Ceiling fans including their suspension shall conform to relevant Indian Standards.
   ii) All ceiling fans shall be wired to ceiling roses or to special connector boxes, and suspended from hooks or shackles, with insulators between hooks and suspension rods. There shall be no joint in the suspension rod.
   iii) For wooden or steel joists and beams, the suspension shall consist of GI flat of size not less than 40 mm x 6 mm, secured on the sides of the joists or beams by means of two coach screws of size not less than 5 cm for each flat. Where there is space above the beam, a through-bolt of size not less than 1.5 cm dia, shall be placed above the beam from which the flats are suspended. In the latter case, the flats shall be secured from movements by means of another bolt and nut at the bottom of the beam. A hook consisting of MS rod of size not less than 1.5 cm dia shall be inserted between the MS flat through oval holes on their sides. Alternatively, the flats may be bent inwards to hold tightly between them by means of a bolt and nut, a hook of ‘S’ form.
   iv) In the case of ‘I’ beams, flats shall be shaped suitably to catch the flanges and shall be held together by means of a long bolt and nut.
   v) For concrete roofs, a 12 mm dia. MS rod in the shape of ‘U’ with their vertical legs bent horizontally at the top at least 19 cm on either side, and bound to the top reinforcement of the roof shall be used, as shown in Fig. 5.
   vi) In buildings with concrete roofs having a low ceiling height, where the fan clamp mentioned under sub clause (v) above cannot be used, or wherever specified, recessed type fan clamp inside metallic box, as shown in Fig. 6 shall be used.
   vii) Canopies on top of suspension rod shall effectively hide the suspension.
   viii) The leading in wire shall be of nominal cross sectional area not less than 1.5 sq. mm. and shall be protected from abrasion.
   ix) Unless otherwise specified, all ceiling fans shall be hung 2.75m above the floor.
   x) In the case of measurement of extra down rod for ceiling fan including wiring,
the same shall be measured in units of 10cm. Any length less than 5cm shall be ignored.

xi) The wiring of extra down rod shall be paid as supplying and drawing cable in existing conduit.

b. Exhaust Fans:
   i) Exhaust fans shall conform to relevant Indian Standards.
   ii) Exhaust fans shall be erected at the places indicated by the Engineer-in-charge. For fixing an exhaust fan, a circular opening shall be provided in the wall to suit the size of the frame, which shall be fixed by means of rag bolts embedded in the wall. The hole shall be neatly plastered to the original finish of the wall. The exhaust fan shall be connected to the exhaust fan point, which shall be wired as near to the opening as possible, by means of a flexible cord, care being taken to see that the blades rotate in the proper direction.
   iii) Exhaust fans for installation in corrosive atmosphere, shall be painted with special PVC paint or chlorinated rubber paint.
   iv) Installation of exhaust fans in kitchens, dark rooms and such other special locations need careful consideration; any special provisions needed shall be specified.

c. Regulators:
The metallic body of regulators of ceiling fans/exhaust fans shall be connected to earth by protective conductor.

3.17 Marking of Switch Boards:
   i. Schematic diagram:
      First a comprehensive schematic diagram for each building is to be prepared, starting from Main LT Panel, rising main, submain boards, DBs, etc. and the manner in which they are connected. This will include essential, non-essential and UPS systems. Sizes of interconnecting main/submain cables shall be indicated.
   ii. Marking of each Main Board:
      Each main board/submain board shall be marked indicating rating of each incoming/outgoing switch and the details of load/area it feeds. Detail/size of incoming and outgoing cable also shall be marked indicating from where the incoming cable has originated.
   iii. Marking of Distribution Board:
      Each Distribution Board shall be marked indicating detail of incoming switch (Size of cable and from where it is fed) and marking of each outgoing MCB indicating the area it feeds. Suitable marking sticker will be suitably fixed to indicate such details.
iv. **Marking of Power/Light DBs:**
Power/light DBs shall be marked ‘P’ and ‘L’ respectively.

v. **Marking for Non-essential/Essential/UPS/Switch Boards:**
Each switchboard shall be marked Essential/non-essential/UPS to indicate the nature of such switchboards.

vi. **Marking of Main earthing terminal:**
Main earthing terminals in main/submain switchboard shall be permanently marked, as “safety Earth – don’t remove”.

3.18 **LT distribution switchgear:**
Only following type switchboards will be used:

a. Main/Submain switchboard of cubicle type.

b. DBs – Only pre-wired type MCB/HRC type DBs to be used.

c. Specially designed switchboards.
Also specially designed switchboards can be used with detailed specification and fabrication drawings approved by the technical sanctioning authority.

d. Specifications of cubicle panel and pre-wired DB are given in Clause 7.1.2 of Chapter 7.

3.19 **Location of Switchboards:**
i. Switch boards are to be located in common areas like corridors, lobby etc. and not to be located in locked room.

ii. Switch board shall be located only in dry situation and in well-ventilated space. They shall not be placed in the vicinity of storage battery or exposed to chemical fume.

iii. Switch boards shall not be erected above gas stove, or sinks or within 2.5 meter of any washing unit in washing rooms of launderings or in the bath rooms, toilets, or kitchen.

iv. As far as possible main boards shall not be located in basement. Such main boards can be located in ground floor.

v. It is preferable to locate floor main boards in rising main shafts of adequate size, with steel doors (having ventilation) or in suitable room.

vi. Similarly DBs can be in suitable nitches in corridor walls having doors.

vii. Locating main boards under staircase or standing open in corridor is not a desirable practice, besides being highly unaesthetic.
viii. The main switchboard, which receives power to the building, should be invariably located in a switch room, having round the clock access, for emergency attendance to the switchboard.

3.20 Guidelines for planning residential areas:

i. U.G. system of power distribution, street lighting, telephone cabling and TV cabling:
   For long-term economical maintenance, better reliability of service, safety, protection against heavy rains, storm, wind etc. and aesthetics, under ground cable system will be generally followed. Also considering the high cost of land, under ground system results in better economic utilization of land area, otherwise substantial land route has to be earmarked for overhead lines.

ii. Efficient working of street lights and staircase lighting is required for security of the colony and safety and convenience of the residents. Therefore adequate street lighting, staircase lighting to be provided. Generally back lanes of residential blocks remain dark. Such areas are also to be covered by basic street lighting for security.

iii. Kitchen:
   i. Exhaust fans opening with one point outlet to be provided irrespective of yardstick of provision of exhaust fans.
   ii. In addition to one 16 A, 6-pin power outlet for kitchen, on 3 pin 6 Amp. outlet to be provided for water filter.

iv. Washing Machine: Location to be finalized in consultation with the Architect. A power outlet plus water supply/drainage to be coordinated with Architect/Civil Engineer.

v. Meter Board: For A Block of quarters.
   Generally for a block of quarters of 2/3/4 storied, electric supply for each block is received in a meter board, where a cubicle meter panel is provided with system of power distribution to each quarter.
   (SEE FIG 7)

   At present such meter boards are invariably located under staircase. This is not a desirable practice from technical/aesthetic viewpoint.
   It is technically desirable to coordinate with Architect to provide separate meter room for each block of quarters or a number of blocks.
vi. **Stair case lighting:**
Stair case lighting is to be treated as an extension of street lighting, for security and convenience of the residents. CFL (1 x 11 Watt) type stair case lighting may be provided to reduce load. As for example, need of 200 quarters can be met with 100 CFL fitting (each of 11 watt), with connected load of 1.5 KW only. Incandescent stair case lighting and bulk head fittings should not be provided, in view of excessive energy consumption and low burning hours.

vii. **Emergency Electric supply:**
For ensuring essential water supply and security lighting, a D.G. set to be provided for each colony to take care of water supply pump set, street lighting and essential load requirement of buildings like CGHS Dispensary, Community Center etc.

viii. **Fittings:**
Subject to limit of yardstick of fittings for various types of quarters following guidelines to be provided:

i. Every room to be provided with one fluorescent fitting for energy saving.

ii. Kitchen to be provided with a fluorescent fitting, tapped from a batten holder (through an adopter), so that in case of need batten holder can be used with bulbs.

iii. Incandescent bulkhead fittings not to be used.

iv. Quality fittings of reputed make to be used.

ix. **Main Board of Each Quarter:**
It shall be MCB type with provision of ELCB with the incoming MCB. It shall be located in a nitch with ventilated door cover, in the room connecting to the entry of the quarter. MCB DB shall be pre-wired type, for trouble free service.

x. **Corrosion free fittings:**
Coastal areas and humid areas like kitchen, toilet are subject to corrosion, which substantially reduces the useful life of such fittings, besides giving an ugly look on account of rusting.

Therefore for coastal areas, and other humid areas corrosion free type of fittings (like aluminium, stainless steel, engineering plastic) should be used, for ensuring long life of such fittings and to achieve life cycle economy, after taking into account recurring expenditure on account of painting of fittings.
xii. **TV Cabling:**
Internal TV cabling shall be provided, with two outlets up to Type III quarters and three outlets for type IV quarters and above. Similarly, from suitable point at ground floor, TV cabling shall be provided. With use of suitable splitters, such TV cabling to be connected to each quarter.

xiii. **Lighting for parks:**
Colonies are provided with parks. Such parks should be provided with adequate lights to include area lights, pathway lights etc so that the parks can be effectively used by the residents and they remain secure during nighttime.

xiv. **External pipe network for laying telephone and TV cabling for the Colony:**
Starting from a suitable room, pipe network may be provided to lay telephones/TV cables for the colony. Suitable road cross pipe and manholes to be provided for drawing such cables and their maintenance.

xv. **Preliminary estimate to take care of telephone/TV cabling in a colony:**
At present, such services are provided in a very crude manner making use of existing poles and hanging cables. Apart from making colonies shabby, such services are subject to damages and unsatisfactory service. Therefore preliminary estimate should provide for such TV/Telephone cabling for the colony.

xvi. **Other Allied Services:**
Modern residential colonies require support services like CCTV (for Gate and house security), intercom system, basic security system etc. for the safety and convenience of the residents. Therefore, preliminary estimate should provide for basic provisions for such safety/security systems. Most of these services pay for themselves within 3/4 years of installation, besides providing security, which sometimes amount to life saving instances.
3.21 Guidelines for planning office buildings:

i. The main objective is to avoid possible fire hazards, which calls for sound detailed designing and use of quality equipments and materials executed with sound workmanship and supervision.

ii. All control LT Panels, controlling power supply to the entire building will be located in a centralized room, from where centralized control and monitoring of the entire power supply system can be made.

iii. Earth fault protection shall be provided for each individual building at the LT receiving point i.e. Main LT Panel. ELCB shall not be provided as a matter of routine in distribution boards. These can be provided, if required, by The Chief Engineer (E), in charge.

iv. Office buildings are prone to fire hazard during night hours. Therefore, after office hours, all the LT Panels should be switched off. Based on need of the building, only the specified LT panel to be kept ‘ON’ which feed the loads during night hours. Such panel, called common service panel, may feed following loads, which are normally used after office hours:
   i. Some specified lifts.
   ii. Staircase/ Corridor/ Compound light.
   iii. Fire protection loads.
   iv. Pump Sets.
   v. Other loads which are kept ‘ON’ after office hours.

v. Reliability of Power Supply:
Minimum two transformers to be provided to provide certain redundancy. Also a smaller size transformer may be provided to take care of reduced load during ‘after office’ hours to have energy saving of transformer, after proper technical evaluation.

vi. It is preferable to plan for a separate service building, to combine all electrical and Mechanical services of the building, so that the services can be maintained comprehensively at a lower cost and also reducing the overall area requirement. Such service building can combine electric substation, DG Sets, UPS, Air-conditioning Plant, water supply pump sets. etc.

vii. While planning, maintainability of various services to be ensured, like providing facilities like access, approachability of various equipments, maintenance space etc.
CHAPTER 4

METALLIC CONDUIT WIRING SYSTEM

4.0 SCOPE

This chapter covers the detailed requirements for wiring work in metallic conduits. This chapter covers both surface and recessed types of works.

4.1 APPLICATION

(i) Recessed conduit is suitable generally for all applications. Surface conduit work may be adopted in places like workshops, plant rooms, pump rooms, wiring above false ceiling/below false flooring, and at locations where recessed work may not be possible to be done. The type of work, viz. Surface or recessed, shall be as specified in the respective works.

(ii) Flexible conduits may only be permitted for interconnections between switchgear, DB's and conduit terminations in wall.

4.2 MATERIAL

4.2.1. Conduits

(i) All rigid conduit pipes shall be of steel and be ISI marked. The wall thickness shall be not less than 1.6mm (16 SWG) for conduits upto 32mm dia and not less than 2mm (14 SWG) for conduits above 32mm dia. These shall be solid drawn or reamed by welding, and finished with galvanized or stove enameled surface.

(ii) The maximum number of PVC insulated cables conforming to IS: 694-1990 that can be drawn in one conduit is given size wise in Table I, and the number of cables per conduit shall not be exceeded. Conduit sizes shall be selected accordingly in each run.

(iii) No steel conduit less than 20mm in diameter shall be used.

4.2.2 Conduit accessories

(i) The conduit wiring system shall be complete in all respects, including their accessories.

(ii) All conduit accessories shall be of threaded type, and under no circumstances pin grip type or clamp grip type accessories shall be used.
(iii) Bends, couplers etc. shall be solid type in recessed type of works and may be solid or inspection type as required, in surface type of works.

(iv) (a) Saddles for surface conduit work on wall shall not be less than 0.55mm (24 gauges) for conduits upto 25mm dia and not less than 0.9mm (20 gauges) for larger diameter. The corresponding widths shall be 19mm & 25mm.

(b) The minimum width and the thickness of girder clips used for fixing conduits to steel joists, and clamps shall be as per Table II.

4.2.3 Outlets

(i) The switch box or regulator box shall be made of metal on all sides, except on the front. In the case of cast boxes, the wall thickness shall be at least 3mm and in case of welded mild steel sheet boxes, the wall thickness shall not be less than 1.2mm (18 gauge) for boxes upto a size of 20 cm x 30 cm, and above this size 1.6mm (16 gauge) thick MS boxes shall be used. The metallic boxes shall be duly painted with anticorrosive paint before erection as per chapter 15 of these Specifications.

(ii) (a) Outlet boxes shall be of one of the size, covered in the Schedule of Rates (Elect.), Part-I Internal-1994/2004.

(b) Where a large number of control switches and/or fan regulators are required to be installed at one place, these shall be installed in more than one outlet box adjacent to each other for ease of maintenance.

(iii) An earth terminal with stud and 2 metal washers and terminal block shall be provided in each MS box for termination of protective conductors and for connection to socket outlet/metallic body of fan regulator etc.

(iv) A metal strip shall be welded/screwed, to the metal box as support if tumbler type of control switches, sockets and/or fan regulators in flush pattern.

(v) Clear depth of the box shall not be less than 60 mm and this shall be increased suitably to accommodate mounting of fan regulators in flush pattern.

(vi) The fan regulators can also be mounted on the switch box covers, if so stipulated in the tender specifications, or if so directed by the Engineer-in-Charge.
(vii) Except where otherwise stated, 3mm thick phenolic laminated sheets as per clause 3.14.c. shall be fixed on the front with brass screws, or aluminium alloy/cadmium plated iron screws as approved by the Engineer-in-Charge.

4.3. INSTALLATION

4.3.1 Common aspects for recessed and surface conduit works.

(i) Conduit joints

(a) The conduit work of each circuit or section shall be completed before the cables are drawn in.

(b) Conduit pipes shall be joined by means of screwed couplers and screwed accessories only. Threads on conduit pipes in all cases shall be between 13mm to 19mm long, sufficient to accommodate pipes to full threaded portion of couplers or accessories.

(c) Cut ends of conduit pipes shall have no sharp edges, nor any burrs left to avoid damage to the insulation of the conductors while pulling them through such pipes.

(d) The Engineer-in-Charge, with a view to ensuring that the above provision has been carried out, may require that the separate lengths of conduit etc., after they have been prepared, shall be submitted for inspection before being fixed.

(e) No bare threaded portion of conduit pipe shall be allowed, unless such bare threaded portion is treated with anticorrosive preservative or covered with approved plastic compound.

(ii) Bends in conduit

(a) All necessary bends in the system, including diversion, shall be done either by neatly bending the pipes without cracking with a bending radius of not less than 7.5 cm, or alternatively, by inserting suitable solid or inspection type normal bends, elbows or similar fittings, or by fixing cast iron inspection boxes, whichever is most suitable.

(b) No length of conduit shall have more than the equivalent of four quarter bends from outlet to outlet.
(c) Conduit fittings shall be avoided as far as possible on conduit system exposed to weather. Where necessary, solid type fittings shall be used.

(iii) Outlets

(a) All outlets such as switches, wall sockets etc. may be either flush mounting type, or of surface mounting type, as specified in the Additional Specifications.

(b) All switches (except piano type switches), socket outlets and fan regulators shall be fixed on metal strips which shall be screwed/welded to the box. Piano type switches and accessories shall be fixed on the phenolic laminated sheet covers in flush pattern.

(iv) Painting after erection

After installation, all accessible surfaces of conduit pipes, fittings, switch and regulator boxes etc. shall be painted in compliance with the clauses under Chapter 15—"Painting".

4.3.2 Additional requirements for surface conduit work.

(i) Painting before erection.

The outer surface of conduit including all bends, unions, tees, junction boxes etc. forming part of the conduit system, shall be adequately protected against rust when such system is exposed to weather, by being painted with 2 coats of red oxide paint applied before they are fixed.

(ii) Fixing conduit on surface.

(a) Conduit pipes shall be fixed by saddles, secured to suitable approved plugs with screws in an approved manner at an interval of not more than one meter, but on either side of the couplers or bends or similar fittings, saddles shall be fixed at a distance of 30 cm from the center of such fittings.

(b) Where conduit pipes are to be laid along the trusses, steel joists etc. the same shall be secured by means of saddles or girder clips or clamps as required by the Engineer-in-charge.

(c) In long distance straight run of conduit, inspection type couplers at reasonable intervals shall be provided, or running threads with couplers and jam nuts shall be provided.
(iii) Fixing outlet boxes.

Only portion of the switch box shall be sunk in the wall; the other portion being projected out for suitable entry of conduit pipes into the box.

4.3.3 Additional requirements for recessed conduit work

(i) Making chase

(a) The chase in the wall shall be neatly made and of ample dimensions to permit the conduit to be fixed in the manner desired.

(b) In the case of buildings under construction, the conduits shall be buried in the wall before plastering, and shall be finished neatly after erection of conduit.

(c) In case of exposed brick/rubber masonry work, special care shall be taken to fix the conduit and accessories in position along with the building work.

(ii) Fixing conduits in chase

(a) The conduit pipe shall be fixed by means of staples, J-hooks, or by means of saddles, not more than 60 cm apart or by any other approved means of fixing.

(b) All threaded joints of conduit pipes shall be treated with some approved preservative compound to secure protection against rust.

(iii) Fixing conduits in RCC work

(a) The conduit pipes shall be laid in position and fixed to the steel reinforcement bars by steel binding wires before the concreting is done. The conduit pipes shall be fixed firmly to the steel reinforcement bars to avoid their dislocation during pouring of cement concrete and subsequent tamping of the same.

(b) Fixing of standard bends or elbows shall be avoided as far as practicable, and all curves shall be maintained by bending the conduit pipe itself with a long radius, which will permit easy drawing in of conductors.
(c) Location of inspection/junction boxes in RCC work should be identified by suitable means to avoid unnecessary chipping of the RCC slab subsequently to locate these boxes.

(iv) Fixing inspection boxes

(a) Suitable inspection boxes to the minimum requirement shall be provided to permit inspection and to facilitate replacement of wires, if necessary.

(b) These shall be mounted flush with the wall or ceiling concrete. Minimum 65mm depth junction boxes shall be used in roof slabs and the depth of the boxes in other places shall be as per IS: 2667-1988.

(c) Suitable ventilating holes shall be provided in the inspection box covers.

(v) Fixing switch boxes and accessories.

Switch boxes shall be mounted flush with the wall. All outlets such as switches, socket outlets etc. shall be flush mounting type, unless otherwise specified in the Additional Specifications.

(vi) Fish wire

To facilitate subsequent drawing of wires in the conduit, GI fish wire of 1.6mm/1.2mm (16/18 SWG) shall be provided along with the laying of the recessed conduit.

(vii) Bunching of Cables

(a) Cables carrying Direct Current may, if desired, be bunched whatever their polarity, but cables carrying alternating current, if installed in metal conduit shall always be bunched so that the outgoing and return cables are drawn into the same conduit.

(b) Where the distribution is for single phase loads only, conductors for these phases shall be drawn in one conduit.

(c) In case of three phase loads, separate conduits shall be run from the distribution boards to the load points, or outlets as the case may be.
4.3.4 Earthing requirements

(i) The entire system of metallic conduit work, including the outlet boxes and other metallic accessories, shall be mechanically and electrically continuous by proper screwed joints, or by double check nuts at terminations. The conduit shall be continuous when passing through walls or floors.

(ii) A protective (loop earthing) conductor(s) shall be laid inside the conduit between the metallic switch boxes and distribution switch boards and terminated into proper earth lugs/terminals. Only PVC insulated copper conductor cable of specified size, green-yellow in color shall be allowed. Such conductors will not run external to the conduits.

(iii) The protective conductors shall be terminated properly using earth studs, earth terminal block etc. as the case may be.

(iv) Gas or water pipe shall not be used as protective conductor (earth medium).
**TABLE I**

Maximum number of PVC insulated 650/1100 V grade aluminium / copper Conductor cable conforming to IS: 694-1990.

[Clause 4.2.1 (ii)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal cross sectional area of conductor in sq.mm</th>
<th>20mm</th>
<th>25mm</th>
<th>32mm</th>
<th>38mm</th>
<th>51mm</th>
<th>64mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

1) The above table shows the maximum capacity of conduits for a simultaneous drawing in of cables.

2) The columns headed ‘S’ apply to runs of conduits which have distance not exceeding 4.25 m between draw in boxes and which do not deflect from the straight by an angle of more than 15 degrees. The columns headed ‘B’ apply to runs of conduit, which deflect from the straight by an angle of more than 15 degrees.

3) Conduit sizes are the nominal external diameters.
TABLE II
Girder Clips or Clamps

[Clause 4.2.2 (iv) b]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of conduit</th>
<th>Width</th>
<th>Thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) 20mm</td>
<td>19mm</td>
<td>0.9mm (20 SWG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 25mm</td>
<td>19mm</td>
<td>0.9mm (20 SWG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) 32mm &amp; above</td>
<td>25mm</td>
<td>1.2mm (18 SWG)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 5

NON-METALLIC CONDUIT WIRING SYSTEM

5.0 SCOPE

This chapter covers the detailed requirements for wiring work in non-metallic conduits. This chapter covers both surface and recessed types of wiring work.

5.1 APPLICATION

5.1.1. Recessed conduit work is generally suitable for all applications. Surface conduit work may be adopted in places like workshops etc. and where recessed work may not be possible to be done. The type of work shall be as specified in individual works.

5.1.2. Flexible non-metallic conduits shall be used only at terminations, wherever specified.

5.1.3. Special precautions

(i) If the pipes are liable to mechanical damages, they should be adequately protected.

(ii) Non-metallic conduit shall not be used for the following applications:

(a) In concealed/inaccessible places of combustible construction where ambient temperature exceeds 60 degrees C.

(b) In places where ambient temperature is less than 5 degrees C.

(c) For suspension of fluorescent fittings and other fixtures.

(d) In areas exposed to sunlight.

5.2 MATERIALS

5.2.1 Conduits

(i) All non-metallic conduit pipes and accessories shall be of suitable material complying with IS: 2509-1973 and IS: 3419-1989 for rigid conduits and IS: 9537 (Part 5) 2000 for flexible conduits. The interior of the con-
duits shall be free from obstructions. The rigid conduit pipes shall be ISI marked.

(ii) The conduits shall be circular in cross-section. The conduits shall be designated by their nominal outside diameter. The dimensional details of rigid non-metallic conduits are given in Table-III.

(iii) No non-metallic conduit less than 20mm in diameter shall be used.

(iv) Wiring capacity

The maximum number of PVC insulated aluminium/copper conductor cables of 650/1100V grade conforming to IS: 694-1990 that can be drawn in one conduit of various sizes is given in Table-I under clause 4.2.1 (ii). Conduit sizes shall be selected accordingly.

5.2.2. Conduit accessories

(i) The conduit wiring system shall be complete in all respect including accessories.

(ii) Rigid conduit accessories shall be normally of grip type.

(iii) Flexible conduit accessories shall be of threaded type.

(iv) Bends, couplers etc. shall be solid type in recessed type of works, and may be solid or inspection type as required, in surface type of works.

(v) Saddles for fixing conduits shall be heavy gauge non-metallic type with base.

(vi) The minimum width and the thickness of the ordinary clips or girder clips shall be as per Table IV.

(vii) For all sizes of conduit, the size of clamping rod shall be 4.5 mm (7 SWG) diameter.

5.2.3 Outlets

(i) The switch box shall be made of either rigid PVC molding, or mild steel, or cast iron on all sides except at the front. The regulator boxes shall however be made only of mild steel or cast iron.

(ii) PVC boxes shall comply with the requirements laid down in IS: 14772-2000. These boxes shall be free from burrs, fins and internal roughness.
The thickness of the walls and base of PVC boxes shall not be less than 2 mm. The clear depth of PVC boxes shall not be less than 60 m.

(iii) The specifications for metallic boxes shall be as per requirements of clause 4.2.3.

(iv) 3mm thick phenolic laminated sheet covers for all types of boxes shall be as per requirements of clause 3.14.c.

5.3 INSTALLATION

5.3.1 Common aspects for both recessed and surface conduit works.

(i) The erection of conduits of each circuit shall be completed before the cables are drawn in.

(ii) Conduit joints

(a) All joints shall be sealed/cemented with approved cement. Damaged conduit pipes/fittings shall not be used in the work. Cut ends of conduit pipes shall have neither sharp edges nor any burrs left to avoid damage to the insulation of conductors while pulling them through such pipes.

(b) The Engineer-in-charge, with a view to ensuring that the above provision has been carried out, may require that the separate lengths of conduit etc. after they have been prepared shall be submitted for inspection before being fixed.

(iii) Bends in conduit

(a) All bends in the system may be formed either by bending the pipes by an approved method of heating, or by inserting suitable accessories such as bends, elbows or similar fittings, or by fixing non-metallic inspection boxes, whichever is most suitable. Where necessary, solid type fittings shall be used.

(b) Radius of bends in conduit pipes shall not be less than 7.5 cm. No length of conduit shall have more than the equivalent of four quarter bends from outlet to outlet.

(c) Care shall be taken while bending the pipes to ensure that the conduit pipe is not injured, and that the internal diameter is not effectively reduced.
(iv) Outlets
All switches, plugs, fan regulators etc. shall be fitted in flush pattern. The
fan regulators can be mounted on the switch box covers, if so stipulated in
the tender specifications, or if so directed by the Engineer-in-Charge.

(v) Painting
After installation, all accessible surfaces of metallic accessories shall be
painted in compliance with clauses under Chapter 15 — "Painting".

5.3.2 Additional requirements for surface conduit work.

(i) Conduit pipes shall be fixed by heavy gauge non-metallic saddles with base,
secured to suitable approved plugs with screws in an approved manner, at
an interval of not more than 60 cm, but on either side of couplers or bends
or similar fittings, saddles shall be fixed at a closer distance from the cen-
ter of such fittings. Slotted PVC saddles may also be used where the PVC
pipe can be pushed in through the slots.

(ii) Where the conduit pipes are to be laid along the trusses, steel joists etc.
the same shall be secured by means of saddles or girder clips as required
by the Engineer-in-Charge. Where it is not possible to use these for fixing,
suitable clamps with bolts and nuts shall be used.

(iii) If the conduit pipes are liable to mechanical damage, they shall be adequately
protected.

5.3.3. Additional requirements for recessed conduit work.

(i) Making chase.

Requirements under clause 4.3.3 (i) shall be complied with.

(ii) Fixing conduits in chase

(a) The conduit pipe shall be fixed by means of staples, or by means of
non-metallic saddles, placed at not more than 60 cm apart, or shall be
fixed by any other approved means of fixing.

(b) At either side of the bends, saddles/staples shall be fixed at a distance
of 15 cm from the center of the bends.

(iii) Erection in RCC work

Requirements under clause 4.3.3 (iii) shall be complied with
(iv) Fixing inspection boxes.

Requirements under clause 4.3.3. (iv) shall be complied with.

(v) Fixing switch boxes and accessories.

Requirements under clause 4.3.3 (v) shall be complied with.

(vi) Fish wire

Requirements under clause 4.3.3 (vi) shall be complied with.

(vii) Bunching of cables.

For ease of maintenance, cables carrying direct current or alternating current shall always be bunched so that the outgoing and return cables are drawn in the same conduits.

5.3.4 Earthing requirements

(i) A protective (earth) conductor shall be drawn inside the conduit in all distribution circuits to provide for earthing of non-current carrying metallic parts of the installation. These shall be terminated on the earth terminal in the switch boxes, and/or earth terminal blocks at the DB’s.

(ii) Gas or water pipe shall not be used as protective conductors (earth medium).
### TABLE III

**Dimensional details of rigid non-metallic conduits**

(Clause 5.2.1 (ii)]

(All dimensions in mm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Nominal outside diameter (in mm)</th>
<th>Maximum outside-diameter (in mm)</th>
<th>Minimum inside-diameter (in mm)</th>
<th>Maximum permissible eccentricity (in mm)</th>
<th>Maximum permissible ovality (in mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>$20 + 0.3$</td>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>$25 + 0.3$</td>
<td>21.6</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>$32 + 0.3$</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>$40 + 0.3$</td>
<td>35.8</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>$50 + 0.3$</td>
<td>45.0</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE IV

**Ordinary clips or girder clips**

(Clause 5.2.2 (vi))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of Conduit</th>
<th>Width</th>
<th>Thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) 20mm &amp; 25mm</td>
<td>19 mm</td>
<td>20 SWG (0.9144 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 32mm &amp; above</td>
<td>25 mm</td>
<td>18 SWG (1.219 mm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.0 SCOPE

6.1 This chapter covers the requirements of mini trunking (casing wiring) and adaptable metallic or PVC trunking ("otherwise also called wire ways").

Adaptable trunking shall be used for power cables and data cables to run parallel in two different compartments with partition.

6.1.1. Mini Trunking is suitable for surface wiring work indoors where necessitated, either due to aesthetics or technical requirements, such as case of extension of existing wiring, avoidance of recessed wiring in RCC columns etc. PVC insulated cables and/or other approved insulated cables to IS: 694-1990 shall be used in this type of work.

Wherever data cables are used for information outlets, Adaptable trunking shall be used.

6.1.2

(i) This system using PVC trunking shall be adopted in residential buildings, or office building where there is a need of tidy wiring system.

(ii) PVC Trunking for distribution of Voice Data and Power should be used for cable management and should accept RJ45 Data socket and Power socket or other wiring accessory like switches, indicators etc.

(iii) Where the trunking has to be necessarily adopted in situations under (i) above, PVC Trunking shall be used.

(iv) Preferred size of the mini trunking should be 25x16 mm, 32x16 mm, 40x25 mm, 40x40 mm and for adaptable trunking it should be 100x34 mm or 100x50 mm or 160x50 mm or 200x50mm for making upto four isolated compartments.

(v) Trunking should be equipped with rail on its surface on which clip-on partition can be clipped which should accept frames/plates for wiring devices upto 6/8 modules.
(vi) Trunking should have insulation rating of 5 mega Ohm. Trunking should have the following fire resistance characteristics.

- Operating temperature between −40 Deg to 60 Deg.
- Glow wire test 960 Deg. C
- Oxygen index − 50 ± 5
- UL94 – VO

6.2 MATERIAL

6.2.1 The mini trunking and adaptable trunking shall be of the same material, viz. either PVC or anodized aluminium in extruded sections.

6.2.2 The mini trunking shall have a square or rectangular body. The trunking cover shall be "CLIP-ON" type with double grooving in the case of PVC wire-ways, and CLIP-ON type for the metallic wire ways. All surfaces shall have smooth finish inside and outside. The top of the side walls of the body shall be suitable for the above types of fixing arrangement of trunking. PVC trunking or Aluminium trunking should have uniform thickness throughout its length and shall be of factory finish.

6.2.3 PVC trunking shall be of good quality PVC, free from defects like deformation, unevenness, blisters, cavities etc.

6.2.4 Dimensions

(i) The sizes of mini trunking for the various sizes of cables and the maximum number of 650/1100 V grade PVC insulated aluminium / copper conductor cables that can be carried in one trunking are given size wise in Table V.

(ii) The thickness of the mini trunking & adaptable trunking shall be 1 mm minimum.

(iii) When mini trunking cover is clipped onto the trunking body, cover should completely overlap on the base (casing).

6.2.5 Outlet Boxes

The outlet boxes such as switch boxes, regulator boxes and their phenolic laminated sheet covers shall be as per requirements.
6.3 INSTALLATION

6.3.1 Attachment to wall and ceiling

(i) The mini trunking and adaptable trunking shall be fixed by means of suitable screws to approved type of asbestos or fiber fixing plugs, at intervals not exceeding 60 cm for all sizes for mini trunking. In case of Adaptable trunking, the screwing distance shall be such that the weight of the trunking & cable hold firmly on the wall or ceiling. On either side of the joints, the distance of the fixing arrangement shall not exceed 15 cm from, the joint.

(ii) All trunking body shall be fixed directly on wall or ceiling as above.

(iii) Trunking shall be used only on dry walls and ceiling, avoiding outside walls as far as possible and shall not be buried in walls not fixed in proximity to gas, steam or water pipes or immediately below the heater.

(iv) Adaptable trunking shall be with pull off cover for protection against dust. Pull off cover shall be removed only on completion of painting of walls.

6.3.2 Passing through floors or walls

When conductors pass through floors, the same shall be carried in an approved PVC conduit, or heavy gauge steel conduit properly bushed at both ends. The conduit shall be carried 20 cm above floor level and 2.5 cm below ceiling level and neatly terminated into the casing. Steel conduit pipes wherever accessible shall be securely earthed.

6.3.3 Joints in casing and capping

(i) The wire ways in straight runs should be in single piece as far as possible so as to avoid joints. Trunking shall be of 2m or 3m standard length for the ease of installation.

(ii) All joints shall be scar-fed or cut diagonally in longitudinal section, and shall be smoothed down by filing to make the joints a very close fit as far as possible and without burrs. They shall be screwed at joints with two or more screws as would be necessary.

(iii) Joints arising out of bends or diversion shall be done using standard accessories like Internal angle, External angle, Flat angle (elbows), Flat junction (T) and end caps. For the separation of data and power cables there shall be partition in both trunking and accessories. Internal and external angle shall have variable angle for the alignment at the wall corners. In no case the radius of curvature of the cables inside a bend shall be less than 6 times their overall diameter.
6.3.4 Trunking should be of white colour in case of PVC trunking and of white or grey colour in case of Aluminium trunking.

(i) Mini trunking attached to ceiling shall be carried completely across the ceiling/wall whenever required by the engineer in charge, instead of being stopped at an outlet location and in all such cases, dummy mini trunking must be provided.

6.3.5 Attachment of capping

(i) Wherever required by the Engineer in Charge, capping shall not be fixed until the work has been inspected with the wires in position and approved. The inspection will be done from time to time as the work progresses.

(ii) Cover shall be attached to body after all the insulated wires are laid inside.

(iii) No screws or nails shall be used for fixing PVC cover to the body.

(iv) Aluminium cover shall be fixed by using cadmium plated flat head / round head screws with an axial spacing not exceeding 30 cm.

6.3.6 Installation of Cables

(i) For ease of maintenance, cables carrying direct current or alternating current shall always be bunched so that the outgoing and return cables are drawn in the same trunking.

(ii) Mini trunking shall be of such a design that it holds the wires inside the trunking body (casing) at suitable intervals, so that at the time of opening of the trunking cover (capping), the wires may remain in position in the trunking body (casing) and do not fall out.

6.3.7 Earth Continuity

(i) A protective (earth continuity) conductor shall be drawn inside for earthing of all metallic boxes of the installations as well as for connections to the earth pin of the socket outlets.

(ii) In the case of metallic trunking there shall be a metallic link between adjacent trunking covers with screw connections, and also connections from the end casing to the earth terminal of metallic boxes / outlets / switch boards as per the case may be, for the complete body earthing of the system.
TABLE V

Maximum number of PVC insulated 650/1100 Volt Grade Aluminium / Copper conductor cable conforming to IS: 694-1990

[Clause 6.2.4 (I)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Cross sectional area</th>
<th>10 / 15 mmx 10 mm</th>
<th>20 / 15 mmx 10 mm</th>
<th>25 / 15 mmx 16 mm</th>
<th>32 mmx 16 mm</th>
<th>40 mmx 25 mm</th>
<th>40 mmx 40 mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Dimensions shown above are outer dimensions of mini trunking.
CHAPTER 7
M.V. PANEL, D.B., RISING MAINS, BUS TRUNKING
AND OVERHEAD BUS BAR SYSTEM

7.0 SCOPE

This covers supply/erection/testing and commissioning of the equipments suitable for 415 Volt, 3 Phase, 50 HZ 4 wire system.

i) For each equipment, required IP rating and short circuit rating capacity will be specified. Governing BIS also will be specified.

ii) All the equipments will be factory fabricated in an approved factory having modern fabrication and testing process. It shall have seven tank pretreatment process comprising of degreasing, rinsing, de-rusting, rinsing, phosphatising, rinsing and passivation followed by powder coat painting having a paint thickness of 60 microns or as specified. The powder paint will be subjected to oven-heated process. All panels will be provided with suitable gasket to make it dust/vermin proof.

7.1 SPECIFICATION OF LT CUBICLE PANEL:

i) Cubicle panel shall be floor mounted (on a base frame) totally enclosed and extensible type. The general construction shall conform to IS: 8623/93. The design shall include all provisions for safety of operating and maintenance personnel. Degree of IP protection shall be IP-42 for indoor application and IP-54 for outdoors, unless otherwise specified.

ii) The panel shall be compartmentalized type having space and arrangement for incoming cable/bus ducting, incoming switchgear/switchgears, bus coupler, insulated and properly supported compartmentalized bus bars, outgoing compartmentalized switchgear, bus bar supports, joint shrouds, cable alleys of suitable size for cabling routing, support and terminations, interconnection between bus bars and switchgear with auxiliary bus bars/insulated conductors/strips etc. Also the panel will be provided with necessary instrumentation like CTs, PTs, Ammeters, voltmeters, phase indicating lamps, other required instruments, wiring, fuses etc.

iii) It shall be fabricated out of CRCA not less than 2.0 mm thick for load bearing members and 1.6mm for doors of LT panels. The framework may be Angle Iron/Channel/Bolted type construction. General constructions shall employ the principle of compartmentalization and segregation of each circuit. Unless otherwise approved, incomer and bus section panels shall be separate and independent and shall not be mixed with sections required for
feeders. Each section of the rear accessible type board shall have hinged access door at the rear. Operating handle of the highest unit shall be at a height not more than 1.7 m. Overall height of the board shall not exceed 2.3 meter.

iv) **Arrangement for incoming/outgoing cable termination:**
Cable entries shall be provided either from the rear or from the front through cable alleys of suitable size. Removable gland plate to be provided for each cable entry. Cable support arrangement to be provided inside cable alley so that cables are neatly arranged and fixed. From each outgoing switch, insulated strip/conductor of suitable size to be provided up to suitable terminal block, which will receive incoming/outgoing cable termination. It is desirable that cables are not terminated directly to switchgear, but terminated through proper terminal blocks.

v) **Specification of Cable Terminal Block:**
Terminal block of reputed make shall be used. The housing material shall be polyamide having unbreakable and fire-retardant characteristic. All the metal parts shall be made up of copper alloy including the screws. Mounting shall be ‘Din’ or ‘G-rail’ type. Screws shall be self-captive type. No protection cover is required, and the block should be touch proof.

vi) **Bus bars/supports/clearances:**
The bus bar system may comprise of a system of main/auxiliary bus bars run in bus bar alleys.

For bus bar material, ratings, current density, insulation, supports, bus bar clearances and joints see para 7.2 (iii).

vii) **Earthing:**
2 Nos. 20x3 mm copper strip for LT panel upto 400 Amp. capacity or 2 Nos. 20x5 mm copper strip for LT panel of higher capacity shall be fixed all around the panel connected to 2 Nos. earth bus copper strips connected to incoming earth conductors.
(Typical Cubicle Panel is explained in Fig.8)

viii) **Commissioning:**
After erection, the LT panel will be commissioned after:

a) Tightening of all nuts and bolts.
b) Closing any left out holes to ensure the entire panel is insect proof.
c) Megger testing
d) Earth testing.
7.1.2: SPECIFICATION OF PREWIRED DB

As a general practice only prewired MCB/HRC type DBs shall be used, on account of their superior technical features, compared to conventional DBs, which don’t allow for proper wiring space and wiring termination. Rewirable fuse type DBs shall not be used.

Prewired DBs shall have following feature:

i) Recess/ Surface type with integral loose wire box.

ii) Phase/neutral/earth terminal blocks for termination of incoming & outgoing wires.

iii) Din Channel for mounting MCB’s.

iv) Arrangement for mounting incoming MCB/ RCCB/ RCBO/ MCCB as required.

v) Copper Bus bar.

vi) Earthing terminals.

vii) Wiring from MCB’s to phase terminal block.

viii) Interconnection between terminal block/incoming switch/bus bar/neutral terminal block/earth terminal connector with specified size of FRLS pre insulated copper conductor cable duly fitted with copper lugs/ thimbles.

ix) Terminal blocks should be suitable for termination of conductor/cable of required size but minimum rated cross section of the terminal blocks should be 6 sq mm.

x) Terminal block shall be made of flame retardant polyamide material.

xi) Colored terminal blocks and FRLS wires for easy identification of RYB Phases, Neutral and Earth.

xii) Prewired DB shall be provided with a detachable cassette for safe removal of MCBs, RCCBs. Terminal connectors from the DB without loosening the internal cable connections of phase and neutral circuits. (This is an optional feature)
xiii) The prewired DB shall have peelable poly layer on the cover for protection from cement, plaster, paints etc during the construction period.

xiv) Detachable plate with Knock out holes shall be provided at the top/bottom of board. Complete board shall be factory fabricated and pre-wired in factory ready for installation at site. The box and cover shall be fabricated from 1.6mm sheet steel, properly pretreated, phosphotized with powder coated finish.

Where specified it shall be of double door construction provided with hinged cover in the front.

(See Fig. 9)  
Note: Prewired DB will be factory manufactured by reputed manufacturer of MCB DBs.

7.2 RISING MAINS

i) Application:

a) The rising mains are essentially used in electrical distribution system in buildings 2 storied and above. These are only for indoor applications. For vertical power distribution, this is a preferred method, compared to rising cable system and is more reliable and safe from point of view of fire hazard.

b) Tap-off arrangements shall be provided on the rising mains with tap-off boxes.

c) The rising main shall comprise of sheet metal enclosure, bus bars, tap-off points, tap off boxes, end feed units, fire barriers, expansion joints, thrust pads, end covers and fixing brackets etc.

d) The rising main shall conform to IS 8623 and IEC 439 and shall be suitable for 415V, 3 phase, 50 Hz supply and insulation of rising mains shall be capable of withstanding the voltage of 660 volt A.C. Degree of IP protection and short circuit rating shall be specified.

ii) Enclosure

The enclosure shall be made from sheet steel of 1.6 mm thickness.

iii) Bus bars

a) Rating:

Bus bars shall be made of wrought aluminium or aluminium, alloy, or electric grade copper, confirming to relevant Indian Standard, as speci-
b) **Current density:**

Bus bars shall be of sufficient cross-section so that a current density of 130A/sq.cm (800A/sq.inch) is not exceeded at nominal current rating for aluminium bus bars, and 160A/sq.cm (1000A/sq.inch) for copper bus bars. The minimum sizes of sections of bus bars are given in Table VI.

c) **Cross Section of bus bars:**

The cross section of the neutral bus bar shall be the same as that of the phase bus bar for bus bars of capacities up to 200A; for higher capacities, the neutral bus bar must not be less than half the cross-section of that of the phase bus bar.

d) **Insulation:**

Each bus bar shall be suitably insulated with PVC sleeves/tapes.

The insulation of the rising mains shall be capable of withstanding the voltage of 660V of A.C.

e) **Bus bar supports**

Bus bar support insulators shall be class 'F' insulators made of non-hygroscopic, non-combustible, track resistant and high strength FRP/SMC/DMC material, and shall be of suitable size and spacing to withstand the dynamic stresses due to short circuit currents. The spacing between two insulators should not exceed 250 mm.

f) **Bus bar Clearances:**

i) The minimum clearance to be maintained for enclosed indoor air insulated bus bars for medium voltage applications shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Between</th>
<th>Min. Clearances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase to earth</td>
<td>26mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase to phase</td>
<td>32mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For strip connection from bus bars to switchgear, the above clearances don't apply.

ii) (a) Bus bar joints shall be thoroughly cleaned and a suitable oxidizing grease shall be applied before making the joint.
(b) High tensile bolts, plain and spring washers shall be provided to ensure good contact at the joints.

(c) The overlap of the bus bars at the joints shall be not less than the area of the cross section of the bus bars.

(g) **Bus Bar Marking:**
Bus bars and main connections shall be marked by color or letter as per table VII.

iv) **Expansion Joint:**
Expansion joint made of aluminium/copper strips shall be provided wherever necessary, to take care of expansion and contraction of the bus bars under normal operating conditions. This shall be invariably provided wherever the length of the rising mains exceeds 15 m.

v) **Thrust Pads:**

(a) The bus bars shall be provided with thrust pads so that the expansion of the conductors is upwards only.

(b) The bus bar clamps and insulators shall be designed to withstand the forces due to short circuit current. They shall also permit free vertical movement of the bus bars during expansion and contraction.

vi) **Mounting:**

i) Incoming cable will be connected to the rising main through an end feed unit, consisting of switch fuse unit with HRC fuse/MCCB/ACB of required capacity and cable end box.

ii) Tap-off boxes at specified intervals and height shall be provided on rising main to tap power. The box shall consists of set of HRC fuses or MCCB/switch fuse unit, so that power from rising main can be switched ON/OFF and provided with suitable overload/short circuit protection.

iii) Distribution boards/switch boards will not be mounted on rising main. Such boards will be separately erected on floor/wall and connected to tap-off box with suitable copper conductor cable (See Fig. 10).
vii) Construction features:

a) The rising mains shall be manufactured in convenient sections to facilitate easy transportation and installation. The sections shall be connected to form a vertical run at site. Each section shall be provided with suitable wall straps at convenient intervals for fixing to the wall.

b) The enclosure shall be sturdy so as to withstand the internal and external forces resulting from the various operating conditions.

c) The front covers shall be detachable. Neoprene gaskets shall be provided between the covers and the side channels.

d) The enclosure shall have a degree of protection not less than IP 42.

e) The rising main shall be designed for temperature rise not exceeding 40 degree C over ambient temperature of 45 degree C.

f) Built-in fireproof barriers having 2 hr. fire rating shall be provided to restrict the spread of fire through the rising mains from one section to the adjacent section.

g) Necessary provisions for ventilation shall be made at suitable intervals. These shall be complete with welded non-ferrous metallic mesh to prevent entry of vermin.

h) Two numbers of copper earth strips of 20x3 mm (for Rising Main upto 400 Amp) and 20x5mm (for Rising main above 400 upto 800 Amp.) shall be provided along side the rising mains enclosure, and shall be bolted to each section of the rising mains.

viii) Installation of rising mains.

(i) Rising mains shall be installed on walls, to which the foundation bolts shall be suitably grouted (in a shaft of adequate size for rising main and floor distribution panel). The foundation bolts shall be provided by the contractor without extra payment.

(ii) a) No structural member in the building shall be damaged/ altered, without prior approval from the competent authority through the Engineer-in-Charge.
b) Structural provisions like openings, cutouts, if any, provided by the department for the work, shall be used. Where these require modifications, or where fresh provisions are required to be made, such contingent works shall be carried out by the contractor at his cost.

c) All such openings in floors provided by the Department shall be closed by the contractor after installing the cables/conduits/rising mains etc. as the case may be, by any suitable means as approved by the Engineer-in-Charge without any extra payment.

d) All chases required in connection with the electrical works shall be provided and filled by the contractor at his own cost to the original architectural finish of the buildings.

ix) Commissioning

Before connecting mains supply after installation, pre-commissioning checks comprising megger test, checking the tightness of connections, body earth connection etc. shall be carried out and recorded.

7.3 BUS TRUNKING

7.3.1 Application

These are generally provided for interconnections between the transformers of 400 KVA and above and DG sets 300 KVA and above and their switch board panels, and also for interconnections between large switch board panels where specified, thereby avoiding use of large sizes of cables for such interconnections.

7.3.2 Materials

7.3.2.1 Enclosure

Sheet steel of minimum 2mm thickness shall be used for fabricating the enclosure.

7.3.2.2 Bus bars and supports

Bus bars and their supports shall comply with clauses 7.2 (iii) of these specifications. The current rating shall be as specified in individual cases.
7.3.3 Construction

7.3.3.1 Enclosure

(i) The enclosure shall be of bolted type, box type, welded type or any other type as per the manufacturer’s standard practice, and shall be made out from sheet steel of minimum 2mm thickness. The front cover only shall be detachable. The section of the bus duct shall be rectangular. The enclosure shall be sturdy so as to withstand the internal and external forces resulting from the various operating conditions.

(ii) The bus trunking enclosure shall be fabricated in convenient sections for easy transportation and installation. The sections shall be connected to form horizontal and vertical runs as required at site. The enclosure shall be provided with flanged ends with drilling arrangements to suit the flanges at the switchgear and transformer terminals. All flanges shall be provided with gaskets, nuts, bolts, washers etc.

(iii) The entire bus trunking enclosure shall be designed for dust and vermin proof construction. The enclosure for outdoor installation shall be additionally in weatherproof construction. The enclosure shall have a degree of protection not less than IP 42 for indoor application, and IP 54 for outdoor application in accordance with IS: 2147.

(iv) Bus trunking, if required to be installed outdoors, shall be provided with a metallic protecting canopy of adequate size above the bus trunking, fabricated as part of the enclosure.

(v) Neoprene gaskets shall be provided to satisfy the operating conditions imposed by temperature, weather etc. and durability.

(vi) Provisions for ventilation shall be made as per clause 7.2.(vii)(g) of these specifications.

(vii) Two numbers of Copper earth strips of appropriate size shall be provided alongside the bus trunking enclosure and shall be bolted with each section of the bus trunking (See Table VIII).

7.3.3.2 Expansion joint/flexible termination

(i) Flexible connections shall be provided by braided or multi leafed conductors for terminations at transformer bushing and switchgear.

65
(ii) Expansion joints shall be provided as per clause 7.2.(iv) of these specifications.

7.3.4 Installation

(i) Each section of the enclosure shall be suspended from the ceiling slab with suitable MS suspenders and support angles/channels. The runs shall be neat and the route shall be as directed by the Engineer-in-Charge.

(ii) The bus trunking shall be supported such that its weight does not come on the terminations.

(iii) Danger notice boards shall be provided on the bus trunking enclosure at suitable intervals in every room through which it passes.

(iv) The earthing strips shall be properly terminated to the earth bars at both ends.

(v) Pre-commissioning checks shall be conducted.

7.4 OVERHEAD BUSBAR SYSTEM

7.4.1 Application

The overhead bus bar system is generally used for distribution of power to a number of distributed power loads, such as motors, as in a workshop. This system has an in-built flexibility for meeting additional loads without much change in the distribution system. These specifications cover indoor application only.

7.4.2 Materials

7.4.2.1 Enclosure

Sheet metal used for fabrication of side channels shall be 1.6 mm thick and the top and bottom covers 1.2 mm thick.

7.4.2.2 Bus bars and supports

(i) The bus bars shall comply with clause 7.2 (iii) of these specifications. The bus bars shall however be rated for 200A, 300A or 400A as specified. Each bus bar shall be individually insulated by means of PVC sleeves.
7.4.3 Construction

(i) The enclosure shall be sturdy to withstand the internal and external forces resulting from the various operating conditions. The enclosure shall have a degree of protection not less than IP 42 in accordance with IS: 2147.

(ii) The top and bottom cover plates shall be detachable, and shall complete with gaskets to make the enclosure totally dust and vermin proof.

(iii) The enclosure shall be fabricated in convenient sections for easy transportation and installation. The bus sections shall be jointed together with flanges and tie bolts. Each section of the enclosure shall be suspended from the ceiling slab with suitable and rigid MS suspenders and brackets as required. Detachable blank sheet steel covers shall be provided for enclosing the free ends of the bus bar run.

(iv) Two numbers of Copper earth strips of appropriate size shall be provided for the complete run of bus bar enclosure and shall be bolted to each section of the bus bar enclosure. Suitable provision should be made to enable earth connection to the plug-in box, when plugged in.

7.4.4. Plug-in boxes

(i) Each section of the bus bar enclosure shall have plug-in points spaced at intervals of approximately 600mm for the insertion of plug-in boxes.

(ii) The plug-in boxes shall be fabricated as compact sheet steel boxes with hinged doors and shall house the fuse holders/ MCCB/ MCB. The fuse holders/ MCCB/ MCB shall be solidly connected to high conductivity copper clip-on contacts and reinforced by spring steel strips. These clip-on contacts shall plug-in directly on to the bus bars at the plug-in points.

(iii) Two earth points shall be located at the ends of the plug-in boxes. While inserting these boxes into the plug-in points, the earth points shall engage first in the special earth bushes provided on the underside of the bus bar enclosure before the main contacts are made. While withdrawing these boxes, the earth contact is maintained even after the main contacts are isolated.

(iv) The plug-in boxes after insertion into the plug-in points shall be fastened by wing nuts.
(v) Each plug-in box shall be fitted with a brass compression gland suitable for the size of the cable specified. It should be possible to provide this gland in any position, i.e. left hand side, right hand side or lower side of the plug-in box.

(vi) The unused plug-in points shall be blanked with detachable sheet steel covers.

7.4.5 Installation

(i) The bus sections shall be jointed together with flanges and tie bolts. Each section of the enclosure shall be suspended from the ceiling slab with suitable MS suspenders and support angles/channels as required.

(ii) Bus trunking shall be suspended at a uniform height of about 2.4 m above floor level. The layout shall be got approved from the Engineer-in-charge before erection. The runs shall be straight, except at points of changes in direction.

(iii) A connector assembly shall be supplied loose with each section of the enclosure for coupling two sections, and it shall comprise a rubber locating ring, bus bar insulating tube and a connector insulating tube.

7.4.6 Earthing

The Copper earth strips of the bus duct shall be connected to the earth bus/earth terminal(s) of the switchboard controlling the bus ducts, by appropriate protective conductors, not withstanding the connection by the armoring of the feeder cable.

7.4.7 Danger notice board

These shall be provided on the enclosure at suitable intervals and not exceeding 5 m.

7.4.8 Precommissioning checks shall be conducted.
### Aluminium / Copper bus bar sections

![Table VI](image)

**[Clause 7.2. (iii) (b)]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Current ratings in amps. Upto</th>
<th>Recommended rectangular cross-section</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aluminium</td>
<td>Copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No. of strips/phase</td>
<td>Size in mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20 x 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>30 x 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50 x 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>75 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>80 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100 x 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>100 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>125 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1600</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>125 x 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2500</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>125 x 10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

(i) In larger bus bars of sizes above 1000 amps, the sections can be accepted in other rectangular cross-sections and numbers also, provided the total cross-sectional area offered is not less than the total cross-sectional area shown in the above table against the respective bus bar rating.

(ii) With aluminium bus bars, only aluminium wire/solid bar connections shall be made for incoming/outgoing mountings on the switchboards.

(iii) With copper bus bars, only copper wire/solid bar connections shall be made for incoming/outgoing mountings on the switchboards.
### TABLE VII

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bus bar and main connections</th>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Letter/Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i) Three Phase</td>
<td>Red, Yellow, Blue</td>
<td>R.Y.B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii) Two Phase</td>
<td>Red, Blue</td>
<td>R.B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii) Single Phase</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv) Neutral connection</td>
<td>Black</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v) Connection to earth</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi) Phase variable (such as connections to reversible motors)</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Gy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (ii) For D.C. bus bars and main connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bus bar and main connections</th>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Letter/Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i) Positive</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>R, or plus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii) Negative</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>B, or minus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii) Neutral connection</td>
<td>Black</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv) Connection to earth</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v) Equalizer</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi) Phase variable (such as connections to reversible motors)</td>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Gy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: In the wiring diagram, positive and negative should be indicated by ‘+’ and ‘-‘ respectively.
### **TABLE-VIII**

[Clause 7.3.3.1 (vii)]

**A: EARTH CONTINUITY STRIP FOR PROTECTIVE EARTHING OF SUB-STATION EQUIPMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Type of Installation</th>
<th>Earth Electrode</th>
<th>Earth strip from earth electrode to earth bus and loop earthing of equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indoor sub-station with HT panel, Transformer capacity up to 1600KVA, LT panel, Generating set.</td>
<td>Copper Plate</td>
<td>25 x 5 mm Copper Strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indoor sub-station with HT panel, Transformer capacity above 1600KVA, LT panel, and Generating set.</td>
<td>Copper Plate</td>
<td>32 x 5 mm Copper Strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>HT Outdoor sub-station</td>
<td>Copper Plate</td>
<td>25 x 5 mm Copper Strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LT Indoor sub-station with generator</td>
<td>Copper Plate</td>
<td>25 x 5 mm Copper Strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>LT switch room having Main LT Switch Board</td>
<td>Copper Plate</td>
<td>20 x 3 mm Copper Strip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B: EARTH CONTINUITY STRIP FOR BUS TRUNKING AND RISING MAIN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Type of Installation</th>
<th>Material of main conductor</th>
<th>Earth Strip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Bus trunking up to 2500 Amp capacity</td>
<td>Copper/Aluminium</td>
<td>2 Nos. 25 x 5 mm copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Bus trunking above 2500 Amp capacity</td>
<td>Copper/Aluminium</td>
<td>2 Nos. 32 x 5 mm copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Bus trunking for connecting generating set and LT panel</td>
<td>Copper/Aluminium</td>
<td>2 Nos. 25 x 5 mm copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rising main up to 400 Amp capacity</td>
<td>Copper/Aluminium</td>
<td>2 Nos. 20 x 3 mm copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Rising main above 400 Amp and up to 800 Amp capacity</td>
<td>Copper/Aluminium</td>
<td>2 Nos. 20 x 5 mm copper strip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**C: NEUTRAL EARTHING OF TRANSFORMERS AND GENERATORS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
<th>Earth Electrode</th>
<th>Earth strip from earth station to neutral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Transformer of capacity up to 1600 KVA</td>
<td>Copper plate</td>
<td>25 x 5mm Copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Transformer of capacity above 1600 KVA</td>
<td>Copper plate</td>
<td>32 x 5mm Copper strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Generating set of all capacity</td>
<td>Copper plate</td>
<td>25 x 5mm Copper strip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 8
EARTHING

8.0 SCOPE

This chapter covers the essential requirements of earthing system components and their installation. This shall be read with Appendix F, which lays down criteria for their design. For details not covered in these specifications IS code of Practice on Earthing (IS: 3043-1987) shall be referred to.

8.1 APPLICATION

(i) The electrical distribution system in the Department is with earthed neutral (i.e. neutral earthed at the transformer / generator end). In addition to the neutral earthing, provision is made for earthing the metallic body of equipments and non-current carrying metallic components in the sub-station, as well as in the internal/external electrical installations.

(ii) Earthing system is also required for lightning protection, computer installations and hospital operation theaters, etc. for functional reasons.

(iii) Earthing requirements are laid down in Indian Electricity Rules, 1956, as amended from time to time, and in the Regulations of the Electricity Supply Authority concerned. These shall be complied with.

(iv) Application for Internal E.I.

a) Every sub-main will have earth continuity conductor to run along with sub-main wiring. In case of 3-phase sub-main wiring two earth continuity conductors shall be provided.

b) Every circuit will have its earth continuity conductor to run along with circuit wiring. In case of 3-phase circuit two earth continuity conductors shall be provided.

c) Looping of earth is allowed only in case of point wiring.

d) When 2/3 power outlets are looped to one circuit, earth looping of these outlets is permissible.
8.2 TYPES OF ELECTRODES & MATERIAL

8.2.1 Earth Electrodes

8.2.1.1 Types

The type of earth electrode shall be any of the following, as specified. (For selection criteria in designs, Appendix F may be referred to).

(a) Pipe earth electrode.

(b) Plate earth electrode.

(c) Strip or conductor earth electrode.

8.2.1.2 Electrode materials and dimensions.

(i) The materials and minimum sizes of earth electrodes shall be as per Table IX.

(ii) GI pipe electrodes shall be cut tapered at the bottom, and provided with holes of 12mm dia, drilled not less than 7.5 cm from each other up to 2 m of length from the bottom.

(iii) The length of the buried strip or conductor earth electrode shall be not less than 15 m. This length shall suitably be increased if necessary, on the basis of the information available about soil resistance, so that the required earth resistance is obtained. Prior approval of the Engineer-in-Charge shall be taken for any such increase in length.

(iv) All hardware items used for connecting the earthing conductor with the electrode shall be of GI in the case of GI pipe and GI plate earth electrodes, and forged tinned brass in case of copper plate electrodes.

8.2.2 Earthing Conductor & sizes

(i) The earthing conductor (protective conductor from earth electrode up to the main earthing terminal/earth bus, as the case may be) shall be of the same material as the electrode, viz. GI or copper, and in the form of wire or strip as specified.

(ii) The size of earthing conductor shall be specified, but this shall not be less than the following (For calculating the size of the earthing conductor in design, Appendix F para 3.5.1).
(a) 4mm dia. (8 SWG) copper wire.

(b) 25mm x 4mm in the case of GI strip, or,

(c) 20mm x 3mm in the case of copper strip.

(iii) Earthing conductor larger than the following sectional areas need not be used, unless otherwise specified.

(a) 150 sq.mm. in case of GI, or,

(b) 100 sq.mm. in case of copper.

8.2.3 Earth continuity / loop earthing conductor & sizes

(i) The material and size of protective conductors shall be as specified below (for criteria in design of these appendix F may be referred to):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of phase conductor</th>
<th>Size of protective conductor of the same material as phase conductor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Upto 4 sqmm</td>
<td>4 sq.mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 4 sqmm up to 16 sq.mm.</td>
<td>Same size as phase conductor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 16 sqmm up to 35 sq.mm.</td>
<td>16 sq.mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 35 sq.mm.</td>
<td>Half of the phase conductor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3 LOCATION FOR EARTH ELECTRODES

(i) Normally an earth electrode shall not be located closer than 1.5 m from any building. Care shall be taken to see that the excavation for earth electrode does not affect the foundation of the building; in such cases, electrodes may be located further away from the building, with the prior approval of the Engineer-in-Charge.

(ii) The location of the earth electrode will be such that the soil has a reasonable chance of remaining moist as far as possible. Entrances, pavements and roadways, should be avoided for locating earth electrodes.

8.4 INSTALLATION

8.4.1 Electrodes

8.4.1.1. Various types of electrodes
(i)  (a) Pipe electrode shall be buried in the ground vertically with its top at not less than 20 cm below the ground level. The installation shall be carried out as shown in Fig. 11.

(b) In locations where the full length of pipe electrode is not possible to be installed due to meeting a water table, hard soil or rock, the electrode may be to reduced length, provided the required earth resistance result is achieved with or without additional electrodes, or any alternative method of earthing may be adopted, with the prior approval of the Engineer-in-charge. Pipe electrodes may also be installed in horizontal formation in such exceptional cases.

(ii) Plate electrode shall be buried in ground with its faces vertical, and its top not less than 1.5 m below the ground level. The installation shall be carried out as shown in Fig. 12.

(iii) When more than one electrode (plate/pipe) is to be installed, a separation of not less than 2 m shall be maintained between two adjacent electrodes.

(iv) (a) The strip or conductor electrode shall be buried in trench not less than 0.5 m deep.

(b) If conditions necessitate the use of more than one strip or conductor electrode, they shall be laid as widely distributed as possible, in a single straight trench where feasible, or preferably in a number of trenches radiating from one point.

(c) If the electrode cannot be laid in a straight length, it may be laid in a zigzag manner with a deviation upto 45 degrees from the axis of the strip. It can also be laid in the form of an arc with curvature more than 1 m or a polygon.

8.4.1.2. Artificial treatment of soil

When artificial treatment of soil is to be resorted to, the same shall be specified in the schedule of work. The electrode shall be surrounded by charcoal/coke and salt as indicated in Fig. 11 and 12. In such cases, excavation for earth electrode shall be increased as per the dimensions indicated in these figures.

8.4.1.3 Watering arrangement

(i) In the case of plate earth electrodes, a watering pipe 20 mm dia. Medium class pipe shall be provided and attached to the electrodes as shown in Fig. 9 and 10. A funnel with mesh shall be provided on the top of this pipe for watering the earth.
(ii) In the case of pipe electrodes, a 40 mm x 20 mm reducer shall be used for fixing the funnel with mesh.

(iii) The watering funnel attachment shall be housed in a masonry enclosure of size not less than 30 cm x 30 cm x 30 cm.

(iv) A cast iron / MS frame with MS cover, 6mm thick, and having locking arrangement shall be suitably embedded in the masonry enclosure.

8.4.2 Earthing conductor (Main earthing lead)

(i) In the case of plate earth electrode, the earthing conductor shall be securely terminated on to the plate with two bolts, nuts, check nuts and washers.

(ii) In the case of pipe earth electrode, wire type earthing conductor shall be secured as indicated in fig. 11 using a through bolt, nuts and washers and terminating socket.

(iii) A double C-clamp arrangement shall be provided for terminating tape type earthing conductor with GI watering pipe coupled to the pipe earth electrode. Galvanized "C" shaped strips, bolts, washers, nuts and check nuts of adequate size shall be used for the purpose.

(iv) The earthing conductor from the electrode up to the building shall be protected from mechanical injury by a metal class, 15mm dia. GI pipe in the case of wire, and by 40mm dia, medium class GI pipe in the case of strip. The protection pipe in ground shall be buried at least 30 cm deep (to be increased to 60 cm in case of road crossing and pavements). The portion within the building shall be recessed in walls and floors to adequate depth in due co-ordination with the building work.

(v) The earthing conductor shall be securely connected at the other end to the earth stud/earth bar provided on the switch board by:

(a) Soldered or preferably crimped lug, bolt, nut and washer in the case of wire, and

(b) Bolt, nut and washer in case of strip conductor.

In the case of substations or alternators, the termination shall be made on the earthing terminal of the neutral point on the equipment and/or the earth bus, as the case may be.

8.4.3 Loop Earthing/Earth continuity Conductor
(i) Earth terminal of every switchboard in the distribution system shall be bonded to the earth bar/terminal of the upstream switchboard by protective conductor(s).

(ii) Two protective conductors shall be provided for a switchboard carrying a 3-phase switchgear thereon.

(iii) Loop earthing of individual units will not be however necessary in the case of cubicle type switchboards.

(iv) The earth connector in every distribution board (DB) shall be securely connected to the earth stud/earth bar of the corresponding switchboard by a protective conductor.

(v) The earth pin of socket outlets as well as metallic body of fan regulators shall be connected to the earth stud in switch boxes by protective conductor. Where the switch boxes are of non-metallic type, these shall be looped at the socket earth terminals, or at an independent screwed connector inside the switch box. Twisted earth connections shall not be accepted in any case.

8.5 EARTH RESISTANCE

(i) The earth resistance at each electrode shall be measured. No earth electrode shall have a greater ohmic resistance than 5 ohms as measured by an approved earth testing apparatus. In rocky soil the resistance may be up to 8 ohms.

(ii) Where the above stated earth resistance is not achieved, necessary improvement shall be made by additional provisions, such as additional electrode (s), different type of electrode, or artificial chemical treatment of soil etc., as may be directed by the Engineer-in-Charge.

8.6 MARKING

(i) Earth bars/terminals at all switch boards shall be marked permanently, either as “E” or as

(ii) Main earthing terminal shall be marked “SAFETY EARTH—DO NOT DISCONNECT”.

8.7 USE OF RESIDUAL CURRENT DEVICES (RCDs)

An extract on selection and application of RCDs (also known as RCCBs) from IS: 12640-1988 is given at Appendix G. Provision of RCD shall be specified in individual cases keeping in view the type, use, importance, system of earthing and nature of electrical installations to be protected by the RCCBs, requirements of the local electric supply company, etc. The sensitivity shall be 30mA, 100mA, 300mA, or 500mA, as specified.
### TABLE IX

**Materials and sizes of earth electrodes**

[Clause 8.2.1.2 (i)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Electrode</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pipe</td>
<td>GI medium class</td>
<td>40mm dia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.45m long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Without any joint)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plate</td>
<td>(i) GI</td>
<td>60 cm x 60 cm x 6 mm thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Copper</td>
<td>60 cm x 60 cm x 3 mm thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip</td>
<td>(i) GI</td>
<td>100 sq.mm section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) Copper</td>
<td>40 sq.mm section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conductor</td>
<td>(i) Copper</td>
<td>4mm dia (8 SWG)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Galvanization of GI items shall conform to Class IV of IS: 4736-1986.
CHAPTER 9

PROTECTION OF BUILDING AGAINST LIGHTNING

9.0 SCOPE

This chapter covers the detailed requirements of installation of lightning conductor system for protection of buildings against lightning. The principles of this type of protection are outlined in Appendix I to these Specifications. For details not covered in these specifications, reference may be made to IS: 2309-1989.

9.1 APPLICATION

This system shall be provided where specified. The decision whether or not to provide this system should be taken by the competent authority considering all relevant factors as per Appendix I.

9.2 PRINCIPAL COMPONENTS

The principal components of a lightning protective system are:

a) Air terminations,
b) Down conductors,
c) Joint and bonds,
d) Testing joints,
e) Earth terminations, and
f) Earth electrodes.

9.3 MATERIALS

9.3.1 The materials of air terminations, down conductors, earth termination etc. of the protective system shall be reliably resistant to corrosion, or be adequately protected against corrosion. The material shall be one of the following, as specified.

(a) Copper: Solid or flat copper strip of at least 98% conductivity conforming to relevant I.S. Specifications shall be used.

(b) Copper Clad Steel: Copper clad steel with copper covering permanently and effectively welded to the steel core shall be used. The proportion of copper and steel shall be such that the conductance of the material is not less than 30% of conductance of the solid copper of the same total cross-sectional area.
Galvanized Steel: Steel thoroughly protected against corrosion by a zinc coating shall be used.

(d) Aluminium: Aluminium, 99% pure, and with sufficient mechanical strength, and protected against corrosion shall be used.

9.3.2 Aluminium should not be used underground, or in direct contact with walls.

9.3.3 All air terminations shall be of GI and all down conductors shall be of GI or aluminium, except where the atmospheric conditions necessitate the use of copper or copper clad steel for air terminations and down conductors.

9.3.4 The recommended shape and minimum sizes of conductors for use above and below ground are given in Tables X and XI respectively.

9.4 LAYOUT

9.4.1. The system design and layout shall be done in accordance with IS: 2309-1989 and specified in the tender documents. The work shall be carried out accordingly satisfying at the same time, the requirements of clauses 8.4.2 to 8.4.3.

9.4.2. Air terminations:

(i) Air termination networks may consist of vertical or horizontal conductors, or combinations of both. For the purpose of lightning protection, the vertical and horizontal conductors are considered equivalent and the use of pointed air terminations, or vertical finial is, therefore, not regarded as essential.

(ii) A vertical air termination, where provided, need not have more than one point, and shall project at least 30 cm, above the object, salient point or network on which it is fixed.

(iii) For a flat roof, horizontal air termination along the outer perimeter of the roof shall be used. For a roof of larger area a network of parallel horizontal conductors shall be installed. No part of the roof should be more than 9 m from the nearest horizontal protective conductor.

(iv) Horizontal air terminations should be carried along the contours such as ridges, parapets and edges of flat roofs, and, where necessary, over flat surfaces, in such a way as to join each air termination to the rest, and should themselves form a closed network.
(v) All metallic projections including reinforcement, on or above the main surface of the roof which are connected to the general mass of the earth, should be bonded and form a part of the air termination network.

(vi) If portions of a structure vary considerably in height, any necessary air terminations or air termination network for the lower portions should be bonded to the down conductors of the taller portions, in addition to their own down conductors.

9.4.3 Down Conductors

(i) The number and spacing of down conductors shall be as specified, or as directed by the Engineer-in-charge.

(ii) Routing

(a) A down conductor should follow the most direct path possible between the air terminal network and the earth termination network. Where more than one down conductor is used, the conductors should be arranged as evenly as practicable around the outside walls of the structures.

(b) The walls of light wells may be used for fixing down conductors, but lift shafts should not be used for this purpose.

(c) Metal pipes leading rainwater from the roof to the ground may be connected to the down conductors, but cannot replace them, such connections should have disconnecting joints.

(d) In deciding on the routing of the down conductor, its accessibility for inspection, testing and maintenance should be taken into consideration.

(iii) Provision when external route is not available.

(a) Where the provision of external routes for down conductors is impracticable, for example, in buildings of cantilever construction from the first floor upwards, down conductors should not follow the outside contours of the building. To do so would create a hazard to persons standing under the overhang. In such cases, the down conductors may be housed in an air space provided by a nonmetallic and non-combustible internal duct and taken straight down to the ground.
(b) Any suitable covered recess, not smaller than 76 mm x 13 mm, or any suitable vertical service duct running the full height of the building may be used for this purpose, provided it does not contain an unarmored or a non-metal sheathed cable.

(c) In cases where an unrestricted duct is used, seals at each floor level may be required for fire protection. As far as possible, access to the interior of the duct should be available.

9.4.4. The lightning protective system should be so installed that it does not spoil the architectural or aesthetic beauty of the buildings.

9.5 INSTALLATION

9.5.1 General

(i) The entire lightning protective system should be mechanically strong to withstand the mechanical forces produced in the event of a lightning strike.

(ii) Conductors shall be securely attached to the building, or other object to be protected by fasteners, which shall be substantial in construction, not subject to breakage, and shall be of galvanized steel or other suitable materials, with suitable precautions to avoid corrosion.

(iii) The lightning conductors shall be secured not more than 1.2 m apart for horizontal run, and 1 m for vertical run.

9.5.2 Air Terminations

All air terminals shall be effectively secured against overturning either by attachment to the object to be protected, or by means of substantial bracings and fixings which shall be permanently and rigidly attached to the building. The method and nature of the fixings should be simple, solid and permanent, due attention being given to the climatic conditions and possible corrosion.

9.5.3 Down Conductors

(i) The down conductor system must, where practicable, be directly routed from the air termination to the earth termination network, and as far as possible, be symmetrically placed around the outside walls of the structure starting from the corners. In all cases consideration to side flashing must always be given.
(ii) (a) Practical reasons may not always allow the most direct route to be followed. While sharp bends, such as arise at the end of roof are in-escapable (and hence permissible), re-entrant loops in a conductor can produce high inductive voltage drops so that the lightning discharge may jump across the open side of a loop. As a rough guide, this risk may arise when the length of the conductor forming the loop exceeds 8 times the width of the open side of the loop.

(b) When large re-entrant loops as defined above cannot be avoided, such as in the case of some cornices or parapets, the conductors should be arranged in such a way that the distance across the open side of a loop complies with the requirement indicated above. Alternatively, such cornices or parapets should be provided with holes through which the conductor can pass freely.

(iii) Bonding to prevent side flashing

Any metal in, or forming a part of the structure, or any building services having metallic parts which are in contact with the general mass of the earth, should be either isolated from, or bonded to, the down conductor. This also applies to all exposed large metal items having any dimension greater than 2 m whether connected to the earth or not.

9.5.4. Joints and bonds

9.5.4.1 Joints

(i) A lightning protective system should have as few joints as possible.

(ii) Joints should be mechanically and electrically effective, for example, clamped, screwed, bolted, crimped, riveted or welded.

(iii) With overlapping joints, the length of the overlap should not be less than 20 mm for all types of conductors.

(iv) Contact surfaces should first be cleaned, and then inhibited from oxidation with a suitable non-corrosive compound.

(v) Joints of dissimilar metals should be protected against corrosion or erosion from the elements, or the environment and should present an adequate contact area.
9.5.4.2 Bonds

(i) Bonds have to join a variety of metallic parts of different shapes and composition, and cannot therefore be of a standard form.

(ii) There is the constant problem of corrosion and careful attention must be given to the metals involved, i.e. the metal from which the bond is made, and those of the items being bonded.

(iii) The bond must be mechanically and electrically effective, and protected from corrosion in, and erosion by the operating environment.

(iv) External metal on, or forming part of a structure, may have to discharge the full lightning current, and its bond to the lightning protective system should have a cross sectional area not less than that employed for the main conductors.

(v) Structures supporting overhead electric supply, telephone and other lines must not be bonded to a lightning protective system without the permission of the appropriate authority.

(vi) Gas pipe in no case shall be bonded to the lightning protective earth termination system.

9.5.5 Test joints

Each down conductor should be provided with a test joint in such a position that, while not inviting unauthorized interference, it is convenient for use when testing.

9.5.6 Earth termination network

(i) An earth station comprising one or more earth electrodes as required, should be connected to each down conductor. This shall be specified.

(ii) Each of the earth stations should have a resistance not exceeding the product given by 10 ohms multiplied by the number of earth electrodes to be provided therein. The whole of the lightning protective system, including any ring earth, should have a combined resistance to earth not exceeding 10 ohms without taking account of any bonding (as per 9.5.3 (iii)).

(iii) If the value obtained for the whole of the lightning protection system exceeds 10 ohms, a reduction can be achieved by extending or adding to the electrodes, or by interconnecting the individual earth terminations of the
down conductors by a conductor installed below ground, sometimes referred to as a ring conductor. Buried ring conductors laid in this manner are considered to be an integral part of the earth termination network, and should be taken into account when assessing the overall value of resistance to earth of the installation.

(iv) A reduction of the resistance to the earth to a value below 10 ohms has the advantage of further reducing the potential gradient around the earth electrode when discharging lightning current. It also further reduces the risk of side flashing to metal in, or of structure.

(v) Earth electrodes should be capable of being isolated and a reference earth point should be provided for testing purposes.
### TABLE X

Shapes and minimum sizes of conductors for use above ground

[Clause 9.3.4]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Material and Shape</th>
<th>Minimum Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Round copper wire or copper clad steel wire</td>
<td>6 mm diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Stranded copper wire</td>
<td>50 sq.mm or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(7/3.00 mm dia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Copper strip</td>
<td>20 mm x 3 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Galvanized iron strip</td>
<td>20 mm x 3 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Round aluminium wire</td>
<td>8 mm diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Aluminium strip</td>
<td>25 mm x 3 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE XI

Shapes and minimum sizes of conductors for use below ground

[Clause 9.3.4]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Material and Shape</th>
<th>Minimum Size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Round copper wire or copper clad steel wire</td>
<td>8 mm diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Copper strip</td>
<td>32 mm x 6 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Round galvanized iron wire</td>
<td>10 mm x 6 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Galvanized iron strip</td>
<td>32 mm x 6 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 10

SAFETY PROCEDURE

10.1 While the Indian Electricity Rules 1956, as amended up to date, are to be followed in their entirety, particular attention is drawn to the various clauses indicated in Appendix 'C'. Any installation or portion of installation, which does not comply with these rules, should be got rectified immediately.


10.3 a) Schematic diagram:

It shall be responsibility of the JE (E)/AE (E) to ensure that for each building, a comprehensive schematic diagram is prepared starting from the main board upto the final DBs. All such boards are to be duly marked and numbered.

Similarly, for each campus consisting of substation/substations and a number of buildings, a comprehensive power distribution schematic diagram for the entire campus shall be prepared.

Based on additions/alterations such diagrams should be updated from time to time.

b) Keep premises clean:

Premises like substations, switch rooms, pump house, generating rooms etc. shall be kept clean. Such premises should not be used to store broken furniture, dismantled materials, waste material, parking boxes etc.

c) Keep all electrical shafts clean and locked:

Such shafts should not be used for dumping floor malwa etc.

d) Protected premises:

All premises like substation, pump house etc. to be maintained as protected area, admission allowed to authorized persons only.

e) Also, the frontage of such areas shall be kept free and parking etc. in front shall not be allowed.
10.4 No inflammable materials shall be stored in places other than the rooms specially constructed for this purpose in accordance with the provisions of Indian Explosives Act.

10.5 Rubber or insulating mats should be provided in front of the main switchboards or any other control equipments of medium voltage and above.

10.6 Protective and safety equipments such as rubber gauntlets or gloves, earthing rods, linemen’s belt, portable artificial respiration apparatus etc. should be provided in each sub-station, service center/enquiry office and important installations. Where electric welding or such other nature of work is undertaken, goggles shall also be provided.

10.7 Necessary number of caution boards such as “Man on Line, Don’t switch on” should be readily available in each sub-station, enquiry office and important installations.

10.8 Standard first aid boxes containing materials as prescribed by the St. John Ambulance Brigade or Indian Red Cross should be provided in each sub-station, enquiry office and important installations and should be readily available.

10.9 Periodical examination of the first aid facilities and protective and safety equipments provided at the various installations shall be undertaken for their adequacy and effectiveness and a proper record shall be maintained.

10.10 Charts (One in English and another one in the regional language) displaying methods of giving artificial respiration to a recipient of electrical shock should be prominently displayed at appropriate places.

10.11 A chart containing the names, addresses and telephone numbers of nearest authorized medical practitioners, hospitals, fire brigade and also of the officers in executive charge shall be displayed prominently along with the First Aid Box.

10.12 Executive Engineers should take immediate steps to train supervisory and authorized persons of the Engineering staff viz. A.Es., J.Es, Head Electricians, Foremen, Electricians and Wiremen in the First Aid Practices, including various methods of artificial respiration with the help of local authorities such as Fire Brigade, St. John Ambulance Brigade, Indian Red Cross or other recognized institutions equipped to impart such training, as prompt rendering of artificial respiration can save life at times of electric shock.

10.13 All new recruits should be given such First Aid Training immediately after appointment.
10.14 All Supervisory and authorized persons of the Engineering staff should be deputed for refresher course in First Aid Training after every two years.

10.15 Details of preventive maintenance to be undertaken shall be in accordance with the chapter 14 of these specifications. All preventive maintenance works shall be preplanned as far as possible and names of persons who are assigned to this work should be entered in a logbook.

10.16 Electrical wiring and control switches should be periodically inspected and any defective wiring, broken parts of switches which will expose live parts, should be replaced immediately to make the installations safe for the user.

10.17 Reports indicating details of preventive maintenance works done should be kept in a register by each Junior Engineer (E) and should bear signatures of Assistant Engineer and Executive Engineer by way of checks.

10.18 No work shall be undertaken on live installations, or on installations, which could be energized unless another person is present to immediately isolate the electric supply in case of any accident and to render first aid, if necessary.

10.19 No work of live L.T. switch board in the sub-stations should be handled by a person below the rank of a Wireman and such a work should preferably be done in the presence of the Junior Engineer (E) in charge of the work.

10.20 When working on or near live installations, suitably insulated tools should be used, and special care should be taken to see that those tools accidentally do not drop on live terminals causing shock or dead short.

10.21 The electrical switchgears and distribution boards should be clearly marked to indicate the areas being controlled by them.

10.22 Before starting any work on the existing installation, it should be ensured that the electric supply to that portion in which the work is undertaken is preferably cut off. Precautions like displaying “Men at Work” caution boards on the controlling switches, removing fuse carrier from these switches, and these fuse carriers being kept with the person working on the installation, etc. should be taken against accidental energisation. “Permit to Work” should be obtained from the Junior Engineer-in-Charge. No work on H.T. main should be undertaken unless it is made dead and discharged to earth with an earthing lead of appropriate size. The discharge operation shall be repeated several times and the installation connected to earth positively before any work is started.
10.23 Before energizing on an installation after the work is completed, it should be ensured that all tools have been removed and accounted, no person is present inside any enclosure of the switchboard etc. any earthing connection made for doing the work has been removed, “Permit to Work” is received back duly signed by the person to whom it was issued in token of having completed the work and the installation being ready for re-energising and “Men at Work” caution boards removed.

10.24 In case of electrical accidents and shock, the electrical installation on which the accident occurred should be switched off immediately and the affected person should be immediately removed from the live installation by pulling him with the help of his coat, shirt, wooden rod, broom handle or with any other dry cloth or paper. He should be removed from the place of accident to a nearby safe place and artificial respiration continuously given as contained in B.I.S. Code and Standard prescribed by St. John Ambulance Brigade or Fire Brigade.

10.25 While artificial respiration on the affected person is started immediately, help of Fire Brigade and Medical Practitioner should be called for and artificial respiration should be continued uninterrupted until such help arrives.

10.26 These instructions should be explained in Hindi/local language to those staff that does not understand English.

10.27 Executive Engineers should take particular care to ensure that these instructions are imparted to the existing staff and as well as to the new entrants.
CHAPTER 11

FIRE HAZARDS

11.1 The main pre-requisites of a fire hazard free building are:

a) Installation based on sound design and use of quality materials and equipments.

b) Good house keeping.

c) Proper maintenance based on skilled personnel, proper supervision and preventive maintenance.

d) Periodic inspection from fire hazard point of view by a qualified engineer.

11.2 Following instructions should be followed. Besides, based on the requirement of a particular building, other instructions may be issued for avoidance of possible fire hazard.

i) No over loading of main board, DB, submain, wiring.

ii) No loose wiring.

iii) One socket out let to feed one appliance only and donot use multiple outlets.

iv) The AE(E) in charge will have an annual inspection of the building and list out deficiencies and report to the EE who will take necessary remedial action.

v) Only MCB type DBs to be provided, so that overload, short circuit currents are interrupted immediately. Rewirable type fuses not to be used.

vi) Change old/outlived wiring, switchboard, and appliance.

vii) Extension to wiring/EL only after proper design and capacity of augmentation of the existing installation (Para 1.18).

viii) Record room – No power outlet / switches should be provided inside the room. Use flameproof electrical fittings. In case it is a must to provide switches / outlets in a record room, they should be flame proof.
ix) Fire Protection:

(a) The building should have a comprehensive fire protection system in conformity with CFO's requirement, backed by proper manning and maintenance.

(b) Important building will have a fire control room, for monitoring and control of fire safety of the building.

(c) Local fire extinguishers for various electrical Switchgears Locations, Lift Machine Room, Electrical Sub-station, Generating Rooms, Pump Houses etc.

(d) Get CFO's annual inspection of the building done.

(e) Organize fire drill periodically, at least once in six months.

x) Maintenance:

Maintenance by qualified/licensed (as applicable) personnel. When maintenance is done by contract system, only properly prequalified and skilled contractors to be deployed. Such contract should have preventive maintenance items.

xi) Only quality and genuine material should be used.

xii) When repairs are needed, act immediately, don't postpone repairs.

xiii) Keep telephone/address details of Fire Station/Police/Hospital/Departmental Officials/Client Department Officials, both Office and Residence (in case of emergency).

xiv) All switch rooms/electrical shafts to be kept clean and duly locked. All locks will have common key, with keys available to all authorized personnel.

xv) Keep appliances 'OFF' after office hours.

Instruction to be issued, so that all switches and appliances are 'OFF' after office hours.
CHAPTER 12

ENERGY CONSERVATION

Energy is very costly. Guidelines for energy conservation:

i. Use energy efficient luminaires.

ii. Some of the energy saving devices are CFL (for corridor, toilet, table lamp), T5 fluorescent tube, Electronic ballast.

iii. For example, replacement of 60 Watt incandescent lamp by 11 Watt CFL (to give same lumen output) saves 125 units a year (Based on 10 hours working a day) which amounts to annual savings of Rs. 500/- per fitting based on Rs. 4/- per unit.

iv. Similarly 70 W/150 sodium vapour street light can replace 125/250-Watt Mercury vapour lamp fittings.

v. Use of day lighting.

vi. Incandescent fittings not to be generally used.

vii. Sensors can be used to switch off lights in case of non-occupancy of rooms.

viii. Timer can be used to switch ON/OFF street light at specified time.

ix. Task lighting to be used in place of general lighting. As for example one 11 W CFL table lamp can give 800 lux on a worktable. Use task light in place of general lighting.

x. 50% of street lighting in a colony can be switched off say after 10 PM when movement of people is drastically reduced.

xi. Similarly, after 10 PM, compound lighting can be switched off, except for basic minimum light, fed from separate circuit.

xii. Use Automation for automatic switch ON/OFF of all common lights.

xiii. Each room can be provided with master switch, so that while leaving room it is convenient to switch off.

xiv. Buildings having complex light system should have building management system with automated energy management.

xv. Maintain power factor, not less than 0.9.
CHAPTER 13
MAINTENANCE

13.1 Organized maintenance based on preventive maintenance is essential to ensure:

(i) Un-interrupted service
(ii) No break-down
(iii) Safety, no mishaps
(iv) Economic operation
(v) Lower Energy bills
(vi) Long useful life.

13.2 Therefore, due importance is to be given for maintenance.

13.3 General guidelines.

13.3.1 Persons engaged in maintenance works should be competent for the type of work involved and should possess necessary license.

13.3.2 Safety procedures as indicated in Chapter 10 should be duly followed.

13.3.3 a) In any building, additions and alterations are bound to occur at any time. When such additions/alterations are to be undertaken, it is very important to check in advance the likely loading of the distribution system and to strengthen the system as necessary before allowing the extra load to be connected, so as to avoid overloading of any part of the system. Even phase balancing may need to be redone so as to keep the neutral current low. To enable compliance to this safety aspect, the detailed distribution schematic diagram indicating also the wire/cable sizes, current rating of switchgear/fuses, loading on individual circuit etc. should be available at site. This may be kept up even in a register form, with different pages for different floors/wings, for ready reference at any time. This should be supplemented with detailed inventory.
b) These should be updated, as and when additions/alterations are carried out so that the data may be fully relied upon for further references. In fact, if any major additions/alterations/rewiring is carried out, proper record should be kept in the history book for the installation.

c) It is necessary that those responsible for the site maintenance should have a clear knowledge about the distribution system.

13.3.4 The number of items to be maintained in a building may be many like fittings, fans, DBs, earth sets etc. In order to achieve compliance to the prescribed periodicities for the various activities on them as per this schedule, each of these items may be divided into convenient numbers, to carry out the respective activities in sub-periods, in a cyclic (sequential) order. For example, if DB’s are to be checked every month, and there are 50 DBs in a building, these may be checked at the rate of 2 or 3 DBs every day in a sequential order (programmed in advance) so that all DBs are checked in a month.

13.3.5 Maintenance activities carried out as per this schedule should be noted in the Maintenance Register. When tests are carried out, the test results should be recorded with appropriate identification references (For Example: SDB7; Earth pit No.4; R/M-Wing A etc.)

13.3.6 a) The voltage of supply, total load current and PF should be noted in logbook every day, preferably during peak loading time of the day. (In the case of isolated/unattended buildings where it is not feasible to log daily, the period may be increased to weekly or fortnightly as feasible).

b) If any instrument is not provided, provide the same now. If any of the instruments is defective, get it repaired early.

13.3.7 Inspection of electrical installations is intended primarily from fire safety considerations. Following points need to be observed as part of inspection, and corrective action as necessary should be taken immediately, including coordination with the client departments concerned, as may be required.

i) Check that – there is no sign of heating up, burning smell, decolouration or sparking at any of the boards (SDBs as well as main boards), and Rising Mains. These may occur due to overloading or loose terminations. Highly unbalanced loading may cause heavy neutral currents and consequent heating of neutral conductors and terminals.
ii) No temporary wiring exists anywhere in the building.

iii) There is no joint in cords connecting the WTAC units/voltage regulators/office equipment like photocopier, PC etc.

iv) No bare wiring exists over the flooring without mechanical protection by a metallic conduit / channel.

v) There is no misuse of socket outlets, such as connecting power load to light socket, connection of multiple loads to one socket, use of heaters in record room, library etc. In such cases of additional demands of outlets, these should be provided early, after taking approval of the competent authority.

vi) All DBs should be only of MCB type and all sockets for WTAC units should be of industrial type controlled by MCB.

vii) The shafts/spaces for electrical services are not misused, for storage or for dumping rubbish.

viii) The spaces in front of DB’s and sockets are free (without any storage of files/papers etc.)

ix) No additions/alterations are done by the user departments to the electrical installations by themselves.

13.3.8 a) A record of loading upto DB level (in each phase in case of 3 phase DBs) should be maintained, after measurements using a clip on ammeter. Such measurement should be done, as far as possible during peak season (summer and winter), when the loads are likely to be the highest.

b) The PF should be maintained above 0.8 (or any higher value fixed by the licensee without penalty). Examine the adequacy of capacitors (if any) accordingly.

c) Note down from the electricity bills, details of maximum demand, energy & PF to examine the trend of loading, penal charges if any being paid etc. (Even if the bills are paid directly by client Depts.) review of contract demand, strengthening of system, PF correction requirements etc. should be done with this review.

13.3.9 a) While cleaning fittings and fans, the fixing/suspending arrangements should also be checked and attended to as necessary. Care should be taken that the alignment is not disturbed.
b)  (i) In the case of ceiling fans, remove the blades, and wash the same with detergent, without causing any deformation of blade angle. Check the shackle and replace if damaged. Check that down rod is fully screwed up to the last thread on both ends and that threads are not loose. If so required, replace with new down rod of the same size, thickness and length of threading (not less than 20mm). Check split pins and replace if any strain deformation or damage is observed. If any other system of suspension had been adopted, check the soundness of the same and tighten as necessary. Fix fan blades tightly to the body. Operate the fan at different speeds; the run should be without wobbling/noise.

(ii) As per specifications, lubrication needs to be done as necessary. In such cases, the fan needs to be brought down, after removing the blades. The old grease should be replaced with a fresh one, after cleaning the bearing. If damaged, the bearing should be replaced. When reinstalling the fan, the suspension bolts should be well tightened.

13.3.10  a) Insulation test should be done during monsoon season, as per clause 16.2 of CPWD specifications for elect. Works part I internal 2004.

b) Earth continuity test and earth electrode resistance test should be conducted during summer season, as per clauses 16.4 and 16.5 of the above specifications.

c) Record the test results giving identification references. If results are not satisfactory in any part of the installation, reason should be checked and corrective action be taken immediately.
CHAPTER 14

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

14.1 Cleanliness is the mother of preventive maintenance. Keep areas clean.

14.2 Have schematic diagram for each installation.

14.3 No loose wiring.

14.4 No overloading.

14.5 Preventive maintenance of switchboards, DBs every six months.

14.6 For multi-storied building go for fuse less switchgear like ACBs, MCCBs, and MCBs, as a precaution against fire on account of short circuit.

14.7 Prepare preventive maintenance schedule for each installation.

14.8 Proper manning/supervision of installation.

14.9 Maintenance of logs records and history sheet of events and breakdowns. Ensure working of all measuring and indicating instruments.

14.10 Take safety measures.

14.11 Annual inspection to ensure system adequacy, safety, efficiency and take remedial measures.


14.14 Display important telephone numbers.

14.15 Entrust repairs and maintenance to only skilled personnel and firms.

14.16 No short circuit to problem like patchy repairs.

14.17 Compound Lighting: Annual painting of poles. 3 monthly cleaning of fittings. Weekly check of working of all fittings. This ensures a bright and safe premises during night.
14.18 For proper maintenance of electrical installations, the following items of work shall be carried out regularly as per periodicity stated below and a proper record of such work shall be maintained.

(a) Earth testing - Once in a year
(b) Insulation test - Once in a year
(c) Cleaning of E.I.
   (i) Residential Buildings - Once in a year
   (ii) Non-residential Buildings - Once in a year
(d) Painting of E.I.
   (i) Residential Buildings - Once in 3 years
   (ii) Office Buildings - Once in 2 years.
   (iii) Important public buildings - Once in a year
   (iv) Spray painting of ceiling fans - Once in 5 years.
(e) Painting of outdoor metallic items like MS poles, feeder pillars etc - Once in a year
(f) Oiling and greasing of fans - As and when required
(g) Checking of regulators, replacement of carbon brushes etc., when required - Once in a year.
(h) Polarity test - Once in 5 years.
CHAPTER 15

PAINTING

15.0 SCOPE

This chapter covers the requirements of painting work in internal electrical installations, carried out manually by brush. This does not cover spray-painting work of factory made items.

15.1 PAINTING WORK IN GENERAL

15.1.1 Paints

Paints, oils, varnishes etc. of approved make in original tin to the satisfaction of the Engineer-in-charge shall only be used.

15.1.2 Preparation of the surface

The surface shall be thoroughly cleaned and made free from dust or foreign matter before painting is started. The proposed surface may be inspected by the Engineer-in-Charge before the paint is applied.

15.1.3 Application

(i) Paint shall be applied with brush. The paint shall be spread as smooth and even as possible. Particular care shall be paid to rivets, nuts, bolts and overlapping. Before drawing out in smaller containers, it shall be continuously stirred with a smooth stick, while painting work is taken up.

(ii) Primer coat of anti-corrosive paint shall be given in the case of steel, work, after preparing the surface. In all cases of painting work, finishing shall be with 2 coats of paint in approved shade.

(iii) Each coat shall be allowed to dry out sufficiently before a subsequent coat is applied.

15.1.4 Precautions

All furniture, fixtures, glazing, floors etc. shall be protected by suitable covering. All stains, smears, splashing, dropping etc. shall be removed. While painting of wiring etc. it shall be ensured that the painting of wall and ceiling etc. is not spoiled in any way.
15.1.5 Repainting

(i) Painting on old surface in indoor situations will not include primer coat except where specially mentioned in the tender documents. However, where rust has formed on iron and steel surfaces, the spots will be painted with one anti-rust primer coat, after preparing the surface.

(ii) In cases of repainting, the old paint shall be removed by first scrapping, or by applying a suitable solvent, and thereafter a fresh coat of the paint shall be applied.

15.2 PAINTING OF CONDUITS AND ACCESSORIES

(i) Requirement of painting of metallic conduits before installation on surface shall be met as per clause 4.3.2 (i).

(ii) Requirement of painting of metallic boxes shall be as per clauses 4.2.3 (i) and 4.3.1 (iv).

(iii) After installation in surface or recess, all accessible surface of metallic conduit pipes and fittings, switch boxes and regulator boxes etc. shall be painted with two coats of enamel paint of approved shade.

15.3 REPAINTING OF CEILING FAN BY SPRAY PAINTING

The spray painting of ceiling fan shall be done as per following procedure.

(i) Clean the surface free from all foreign and harmful materials as dirt, moisture, greasy dirt, salts, rust etc. by means of any suitable detergent as required and dry the surface.

(ii) Rub down lightly with waterproof emery paper, if required in case surface is rusty and wipe off the surface using a piece of clean and dry soft cloth.

(iii) Apply one coat of finishing enamel conforming to IS: 2932-1974 uniformly by spraying and allow it to dry.
CHAPTER 16

TESTING OF INSTALLATION

16.0 SCOPE

This chapter describes the details of tests to be conducted in the completed internal electrical installations, before commissioning.

16.1 GENERAL

16.1.1 Tests

On completion of installation, the following tests shall be carried out:

1) Insulation resistance test.
2) Polarity test of switch.
3) Earth continuity test.
4) Earth electrode resistance test.

16.1.2 Witnessing of tests

Testing shall be carried out for the completed installations, in the presence of and to the satisfaction of the Engineer-in-charge by the contractor. All test results shall be recorded and submitted to the Department.

16.1.3 Test instruments

All necessary test instruments for the tests shall be arranged by the contractor if so required by the Engineer-in-charge.

16.2 INSULATION RESISTANCE

16.2.1 The insulation resistance shall be measured by applying between earth and the whole system of conductors, or any section thereof with all fuses in place, and all switches closed, and except in earthed concentric wiring, all lamps in position, or both poles of the installation otherwise electrically connected together, a direct current pressure of not less than twice the working pressure, provided it need not exceed 500 volts for medium voltage circuits. Where the supply is derived from a three wire D.C., or a polyphase A.C. system, the neutral pole of which is connected to earth either directly or through added resistance, the working pressure shall be
deemed to be that which is maintained between the phase conductor and the neutral.

16.2.2 The insulation resistance shall also be measured between all the conductors connected to one pole, or phase conductor of the supply, and all the conductors connected to the neutral, or to the other pole, or phase conductor of the supply with all the lamps in position and switches in "off" position, and its value shall be not less than that specified in sub-clause 16.2.3.

16.2.3 The insulation resistance in mega ohms measured as above shall not be less than 12.5 mega ohms for the wiring with PVC insulated cables, subject to a minimum of 1 mega ohm.

16.2.4 Where a whole installation is being tested, a lower value than that given by the formula, subject to a minimum of 1 mega ohm, is acceptable.

16.2.5 A preliminary and similar test may be made before the lamps etc. are installed, and in this event the insulation resistance to earth should not be less than 25 mega ohms for the wiring with PVC insulated cables, subject to a minimum of 2 mega ohms.

16.2.6 The term "outlet" includes every point along with every switch, except that a switch combined with a socket outlet, appliance or lighting fitting is regarded as one outlet.

16.2.7 Control rheostats, heating and power appliances and electric signs may, if required, be disconnected from the circuit during the test, but in that event the insulation resistance between the case or frame work, and all live parts of each rheostat, appliance and sign, shall be not less than that specified in the relevant Indian Standard Specifications, or where there is no such Specification, shall be not less than one mega ohm.

16.3 POLARITY TEST OF SWITCH

16.3.1 In a two wire installation, a test shall be made to verify that all the switches in every circuit have been fitted in the same conductor throughout, and such conductor shall be labeled or marked for connection to the phase conductor, or to the non-earthed conductors of the supply.

16.3.2 In a three wire or a four wire installation, a test shall be made to verify that every non-linked single pole switch is fitted in a conductor which is labeled, or marked for connection to one of the phase conductors of the supply.
16.3.3 The installation shall be connected to the supply for testing. The terminals of all switches shall be tested by a test lamp, one lead of which is connected to the earth. Glowing of test lamp to its full brilliance, when the switch is in “on” position irrespective of appliance in position or not, shall indicate that the switch is connected to the right polarity.

16.4 TESTING OF EARTH CONTINUITY PATH

The earth continuity conductor, including metal conduits and metallic envelopes of cables in all cases, shall be tested for electric continuity. The electrical resistance of the same along with the earthing lead, but excluding any added resistance, or earth leakage circuit breaker, measured from the connection with the earth electrode to any point in the earth continuity conductor in the completed installation shall not exceed one ohm.

16.5 MEASUREMENT OF EARTH ELECTRODE RESISTANCE

16.5.1 Two auxiliary earth electrode, besides the test electrode, are placed at suitable distance from the test electrode (see figure 14). A measure current is passed between the electrode ‘A’ to be tested and an auxiliary current electrode ‘C’, and the potential difference between the electrode ‘A’ and auxiliary potential ‘B’ is measured. The resistance of the test electrode ‘A’ is then given by:

\[ R = \frac{V}{I} \]

Where,

\( R \) - Resistance of the test electrode in ohms,
\( V \) - Reading of the voltmeter in volts.
\( I \) - Reading of the ammeter in amps.

16.5.2 (i) Stray currents flowing in the soil may produce serious errors in the measurement of earth resistance. To eliminate this, hand driven generator is used.

(ii) If the frequency of the supply of hand driven generator coincides with the frequency of stray current, there will be wandering of instrument pointer. An increase or decrease of generator speed will cause this to disappear.
16.5.3. At the time of test, the test electrode shall be separated from the earthing system.

16.5.4 The auxiliary electrodes shall be of 13 mm diameter mild steel rod driven upto 1 m into the ground.

16.5.5 All the three electrodes shall be so placed that they are independent of the resistance area of each other. If the test electrode is in the form of a rod, pipe or plate, the auxiliary current electrode ‘C’ shall be placed at least 30 m away from it, and the auxiliary potential electrode ‘B’ shall be placed mid-way between them.

16.5.6 Unless three consecutive readings of test electrode resistance agree, the test shall be repeated by increasing the distance between electrodes A and C upto 50 m, and each time placing the electrode B midway between them.

16.5.7 On these principles, “Megger Earth Tester”, containing a direct reading ohm-meter, a hand driven generator and auxiliary electrodes are manufactured for direct reading of earth resistance of electrodes.

16.6 TEST CERTIFICATE

On completion of an electrical installation (or an extension to an installation), a certificate shall be furnished by the contractor, countersigned by the certified supervisor under whose direct supervision the installation was carried out. This certificate shall be in the prescribed form as given in Appendix ‘E’ in addition to the test certificate required by the local Electric Supply Authorities.
APPENDIX A

[Clause 13.1]

TERMINOLOGY

This appendix indicates some of the commonly used and important terms, relevant for the Internal EL works. For complete list of terms, relevant ISS may be referred to.

1. Exposed conductive part – A conductive part of electrical equivalent, which can be touched and which is not normally live, but which may become the earth potential.

2. Extraneous conductive part – A conductive part not forming part of the electrical installation and liable to introduce a potential, generally the earth potential.

3. Direct contact – Contact of persons or livestock with live parts, which may result in electrical work.

4. Indirect contact – Contact of persons or livestock with exposed conductive parts made live by a fault and which may result in electric shock.

5. Live part – A conductor or conductive part intended to be energized in normal use, including a neutral conductor but by convention, not a PEN conductor.

6. Touch voltage – The potential difference between a grounded metallic structure and a point on the earth surface separated by a distance equal to the normal maximum horizontal reach of approximately 1 meter.

7. Danger – Danger to health or danger to life or limb from shock, burn or injury from mechanical movement to persons (and livestock where present), or from fire attendant upon the use of electrical energy.

8. Earth – The conductive mass of the earth, whose electric potential at any point is conventionally taken as zero.

9. Earth electrode – A conductor or group of conductors in intimate contact with and providing an electrical connection to earth.

10. Earth fault loop impedance – The impedance of the earth fault current loop (phase to earth loop), starting and ending at the point of earth fault.

11. Earth leakage current – A current that flows to earth, or to extraneous conductive parts, in a circuit, which is electrically sound.
12. Earth conductor – A protective conductor connecting the main earth terminal (or equipotential bonding conductor of an installation when there is no earth bus) to an earth electrode or to other means of earthing.

13. Equipotential bonding – Electrical connections putting various exposed conductive parts and extraneous conductive parts at a substantially equal potential.

Note: In a building installation, equipotential bonding conductors shall interconnect the following conductive parts:

a) Protective conductor
b) Earth continuity conductor, and
c) Risers of air-conditioning systems and heating system (if any).

14. Main earthing terminal – The terminal or bar which is the equipotential bonding conductor of protective conductors, and conductors for functional earthing, if any, to the means of earthing.

15. Protective conductor – A conductor used for some measures of protection against shock, and intended for connecting together any of the following parts:

a) Exposed conductive parts,
b) Extraneous conductive parts
c) The main earthing terminal, and
d) The earthed point of the source, or an artificial neutral.

16. Residual current – The algebraic sum of the instantaneous values of current flowing through all the live conductors of a circuit at a point of the electrical installation.

17. Residual current device (RCD) – A mechanical switching device, or an association of devices intended to cause the opening of the contacts when the residual current attains a given value under the specified conditions.

18. Residual operating current – Residual current, which causes the residual current device to operate under, specified conditions.

19. Simultaneously accessible parts – Conductors or conductive parts which can be touched simultaneously by a person or, where applicable by livestock.

Note: In the context of protection against direct contact, a live part may be accessible with:

a) Another live part, or
b) An exposed conductive part, or

c) An extraneous conductive part, or

d) A protective conductor

20. Switch, linked – A switch, the contacts of which are so arranged as to make or break all the poles simultaneously, or in a definite sequence.

21. Switchboard – An assembly of switchgear with or without instruments, but the term does not apply to a group of local switches in a final circuit.

Note: This is as per BIS. In these specifications, this term is used for the mounting frame in particular. With the mountings, it is termed as a switchboard panel.

22. Switchgear – An assembly of main and auxiliary switching apparatus for operation, regulation, protection, or other control of electrical installations.

Note: For more comprehensive definitions of the terms in 2.103 to 2.106, See IS: 1885 (Part 17) – 1979.
CONVENTIONAL SIGNS & SYMBOLS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

General wiring
Wiring on the surface
Wiring under the surface

WIRING IN CONDUIT
Conduit on surface
Concealed conduit
Wiring going upwards
Wiring going downwards
Wiring passing vertically

FUSE BOARDS
LIGHTING CIRCUIT FUSE-BOARDS
Main fuse-board without switches
Main fuse-board with switches
Distribution fuse-board without switches
Distribution fuse-board with switches

POWER CIRCUIT FUSE-BOARDS
Main fuse-board without switches
Main fuse-board with switches
Distribution fuse-board without switches
Distribution fuse-board with switches

SWITCHES & SWITCH OUTLETS
ONE WAY SWITCH
Single pole
Two pole
Three pole
Single pole pull switch
Multiposition switch (for different degrees of lighting)
Two-way switch
Intermediate switch
Periode limiting switch
Time switch
Pendant Switch
Push button
Luminous push button
Restricted access push button
SOCKET OUTLETS
Socket-outlet, 5A
Socket-outlet, 15A
Combined switch & socket-outlet, 5A
Combined switch & socket-outlet, 15A
Interlocking switch & socket-outlet, 5A
Interlocking switch & socket-outlet, 15A

LAMPS AND LIGHTING APPARATUS
Lamp or outlet for lamp
Group of three 40W lamps
Lamp mounted on a wall
Lamp mounted on a ceiling
Counter-weight lamp fixture
Chain lamp fixture
Road lamp fixture
Lamp fixture with built-in-switch
Lamp fed from variable voltage supply
Emergency lamp
Panic lamp

Bulk head lamp
Water-tight lighting fitting
Batten lamp holder
Projector
Spot light
Flood light
Fluorescent lamp
Group of three 40W fluorescent lamps
ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES

General
BELLS, BUZZERS

Bell push
Buzzer

FIRE ALARM

Fire alarm push
Automatic contact
Bell connected to fire alarm
Fire alarm indicator
(At 'N' insert number of ways)

PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM

Amplifier
Control board
Microphone outlet
Loudspeaker outlet

RADIO RECEPTION OUTLETS

Receiver outlet
Aerial

FIXED APPARATUS OUTLETS

Ceiling fan
Bracket fan
Exhaust fan
Fan regulator

EARTHING

Earth point
APPENDIX – C

[Clause 1.21.]

IMPORTANT CLAUSES OF INDIAN ELECTRICITY RULES, 1956

The following clauses of Indian Electricity Rules, 1956 shall in particular be taken care of in the execution of Internal EI works:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause No.</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Authorization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Construction, installation, protection, operation maintenance of electric supply lines and apparatus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Cutout on consumer’s premises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Identification of earthed and earthed neutral conductors and position of switches and cutouts therein.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Earthed terminal on consumer’s premises.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Handling of electric supply lines and apparatus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Distinction of circuits of different voltages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Accidental charges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Provisions applicable to protective equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Instructions for restoration of persons suffering from electric shock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 A</td>
<td>Intimation of Accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Precautions to be adopted by consumers, owners, occupiers’ electrical contractors, electrical workmen and suppliers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Periodical inspections and testing of consumer’s installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Precautions against leakage before connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Supply and use of energy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional provisions for supply and use of energy in multistoried building (more than 15 meters in height).

Provisions applicable to medium, high or extra-high voltage installations.

Declared voltage of supply to consumer.

Declared frequency of supply to consumer.

Sealing of meters and cutouts.

Point of commencement of supply.

Precautions against failures of supply; Notice of failures.

Connection with earth.

Earth leakage protective device.

Use of energy at high and extra-high voltage.

Additional provisions for use of energy at high and extra high voltage.

Connection with earth.

General conditions as to transformation and control of energy.

All clauses (74-93) under Chapter VIII on Overhead Lines.

Mode of entry

Penalty for breaking seal.

Penalty for breach of rule 44A.

Penalty for breach of Rule 45.

Penalty for breach of Rule 82.

Penalty for breach of Rules 77, 79 or 80.

Penalty for breach of Rules.
## APPENDIX – D

*under village electrification including consumer relays*

[Clauses 1.22.4 ]

**IMPORTANT INDIAN STANDARDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CODES OF PRACTICE/GUIDE</th>
<th>TITLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) IS: 732 – 1989</td>
<td>Code of practice for electrical wiring installations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) IS: 4648 – 1968</td>
<td>Guide for electrical layout in residential buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) IS: 8061 – 1976</td>
<td>Code of practice for design, installation and maintenance of service lines up to and including 650 V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) IS: 8884 – 1978</td>
<td>Code of practice for installation of electric bells and call system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) IS: 5578 – 1985</td>
<td>Guide for marking of insulated conductor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) IS: 11353 – 1985</td>
<td>Guide for uniform system of marking and identification of conductors and apparatus terminals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) IS: 13234</td>
<td>Guide for short-circuit calculations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) IS: 7752 (Part-1) – 1975</td>
<td>Guide for improvement of power factor in consumer installation: Low and medium supply voltages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) IS: 3646 (Part-1) – 1992</td>
<td>Code of practice for interior illumination: General requirements and recommendations for welding interiors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) IS: 3646 (Part-2) – 1966</td>
<td>Code of practice for interior illumination: Schedule for values of illumination and glare index</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


(20) IS: 4201 – 1983  Application guide for current transformers.


Electric Fans

(1) IS: 555 – 1979 Electric table type fans and regulators
(2) IS: 1169 – 1967 Electric pedestal type fans and regulators.
(3) IS: 374 – 1979 Electric ceiling type fans and regulators.
(4) IS: 2997 – 1964 Air circulator type electric fans and regulators.
(7) IS: 3963 – 1987 Roof extractor units
(8) IS: 4283 – 1981 Hot air fan
(9) IS: 6272 – 1987 Industrial cooling fans (man coolers)
(10) IS: 4894 – 1987 Centrifugal fans
(11) IS: 11037 – 1984 Electronic type fan regulators.
(12) IS: 12155 – 1987 General and safety requirements for fans and regulators for household and similar purposes.

Low voltage switchgear and control gear

(1) IS: 4237 – 1982 General requirements for switchgear and control gear for voltages not exceeding 1000 V AC or 1200 V DC.
(2) IS: 6875 (Part-1) – 1973 Control switches (switching devices for control and auxiliary circuits including contactor relays) for voltages upto and including 1000 V AC and 1200 V DC: General requirements and tests.
(3) IS: 6875 (Part-2) – 1973 Control switches (switching devices for control and auxiliary circuits including contactor relays) for voltages upto and including 1000 V AC and 1200 V DC: Push buttons and related control switches.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>IS:</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>6875 (Part-3) - 1980</td>
<td>Control switches (switching devices for control and auxiliary circuits including contactor relays) for voltages up to and including 1000 V AC and 1200 V DC: Rotary control switches.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>10027 - 2000</td>
<td>Composite units of air-break switches and rewirable type fuses for voltages not exceeding 650 V AC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>4064 (Part-1) - 1978</td>
<td>Air break switches, air break disconnectors, air-break switch disconnectors and fuse-combination units for voltages not exceeding 1000 V AC or 1200 V DC: General requirements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>2675 - 1983</td>
<td>Enclosed distribution fuse boards and cutouts for voltages not exceeding 1000 V A.C. or 1200V D.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8828 - 1996</td>
<td>Electrical accessories – circuit breakers for over current protection for household and similar installation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>13032 - 1991</td>
<td>A.C. Miniature circuit breaker boards for voltages up to and including 1000 volts AC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>12640 – Part II 1988</td>
<td>Residual current operated circuit breakers with integral over current protection.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>2959 - 1985</td>
<td>Contactors for voltages not exceeding 1000 V AC or 1200 V DC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>2516 (Part-I/Sec 1) - 1985</td>
<td>Circuit breakers: Requirements and tests: Voltages not exceeding 1000 V AC or 1200 V DC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>12021 - 1987</td>
<td>Specifications for control transformers for switchgear and controlgear for voltages not exceeding 1000 Volts AC.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>5039 - 1983</td>
<td>Distribution pillars for voltages not exceeding 1000 V AC or 1200V D.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(16) IS: 8623 (Part-1) – 1993
Specification for low voltage switch gears and assemblies. Requirements for type tested and partially type tested assemblies.

(17) IS: 8623 (Part-2) – 1993
Particular requirements for bus bar trunking system.

(18) IS: 8544 (Part-1) – 1977
Motor starters for voltages not exceeding 1000 V: Direct on line AC starters.

(19) IS: 8544 (Part-2) – 1977
Motor starters for voltages not exceeding 1000 V: Star-delta starters.

(20) IS: 8544 (Part-4) – 1979
Motor starters for voltages not exceeding 1000 V: Reduced voltage AC starters, two-step auto– transformer starters.

Power Cable

(1) IS: 694 – 1990
PVC insulated cables for working voltages upto and including 1100 V.

(2) IS: 1554 (Part-1) – 1988
PVC insulated (heavy-duty) electric cables: For working voltages upto and including 1100 V.

(3) IS: 3961 (Part-5) – 1968
Recommended current ratings for cables: PVC insulated light duty cables.

(4) IS: 4288 – 1988
PVC insulated (heavy-duty) electric cables with solid aluminium conductors for voltages upto and including 1100 V.

(5) IS: 4289 (Part-1) – 1984
Flexible cables for lifts and other flexible connections: Elastomer insulated cables.

Electric wiring accessories

(1) IS: 9537 (Part-1) – 1980
Conduits for electrical installations General requirements.

(2) IS: 9537 (Part-2) – 1981
Conduits for electrical installations: Rigid steel conduits.

(3) IS: 3480 – 1966
Flexible steel conduits for electrical wiring.
| (7) | IS: 9537 (Part-5) – 2000 | Flexible (pliable) non-metallic conduits for electrical installations. |
| (8) | IS: 3419 – 1989 | Fittings for rigid non-metallic conduits. |
| (9) | IS: 14772 – 2000 | General requirements for enclosures for accessories for house hold and similar fixed electrical installations. |
| (10) | IS: 2412 – 1975 | Link clips for electrical wiring. |
| (11) | IS: 371 – 1999 | Ceiling roses |
| (12) | IS: 3854 – 1997 | Switches for domestic and similar purposes. |
| (13) | IS: 4615 – 1968 | Switch socket outlets (non-interlocking type) |
| (15) | IS: 1293 – 1988 | Plugs and socket outlets of rated voltage up to and including 250 volts and rated current upto and including 16 amperes. |

**Electrical lamps and their auxiliaries**

| (1) | IS: 418 – 1978 | Tungsten filament general service electric lamps. |
| (2) | IS: 2418 (Part-1) – 1977 | Tubular fluorescent lamps for general lighting service: Requirements and tests. |
| (3) | IS: 9900 (Part-1) – 1981 | High-pressure mercury vapor lamps: Requirements and tests. |
| (4) | IS: 9974 (Part-1) – 1981 | High-pressure sodium vapor lamps: General requirements and tests. |
(5) IS: 1258 – 1987
Bayonet lamp holders.

(6) IS: 3323 – 1980
Bi-pin lamp holders for tubular fluorescent lamps.

(7) IS: 3324 – 1982
Holders for starters for tubular fluorescent lamps.

(8) IS: 2215 – 1983
Starters for fluorescent lamps.

(9) IS: 1534 (Part-1) – 1977
Ballast for fluorescent lamps: For switch start circuits.

(10) IS: 1569 – 1976
Capacitors for use in tubular fluorescent high pressure mercury and low-pressure sodium vapor discharge lamp circuits.

(11) IS: 6616 – 1982
Ballasts for high-pressure mercury vapor lamps.

Light fittings and luminaries

(1) IS: 1913 (Part-1) – 1978
General and safety requirements for luminaries: Tubular fluorescent lamps.

(2) IS: 10322 (Part-1) – 1982
Luminaries: General requirements.

(3) IS: 10322 (Part-2) – 1982
Luminaries: Constructional requirements.

(4) IS: 10322 (Part-5/Sec. 2) – 1985
Luminaries: Particular requirements: Recessed luminaries.

(5) IS: 10322 (Part-5/Sec. 3) – 1987
Luminaries: Particular requirements: Luminaries for road and street lighting.

(6) IS: 10322 (Part-5/Sec. 4) – 1987
Luminaries: Particular requirements: Portable general-purpose luminaries.

(7) IS: 10322 (Part-5/Sec. 5) – 1987
Luminaries: Particular requirements: Floodlight.

(8) IS: 3287 – 1965
Industrial lighting fittings with plastic reflectors.

(9) IS: 1777 – 1978
Industrial luminaries with metal reflectors.
(10) IS: 2206 (Part-1) – 1984  
Flameproof electric lighting fittings: Well glass and bulkhead types.

(11) IS: 3528 – 1966  
Waterproof electric lighting fittings.

(12) IS: 3553 – 1966  
Watertight electric lighting fittings.

(13) IS: 8030 – 1976  
Luminaries for hospitals.

(14) IS: 7537 – 1974  
Road traffic signals.

(15) IS: 9583 – 1981  
Emergency lighting units.

**Electrical appliances**

(1) IS: 302 (Part-1) – 1979  
General and safety requirements for household and similar electrical appliances.

(2) IS: 2268 – 1994  
Electric call bells and buzzers for indoor use.

(3) IS: 3412 – 1994  
Electric water boilers

**Electrical instruments**

(1) IS: 6236 – 1971  
Direct recording electrical measuring instruments.

(2) IS: 1248 (Part-1) – 1993  
Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories: General requirements.

(3) IS: 1248 (Part-2) – 2003  
Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories: Ammeters and Vammeters.

(4) IS: 1248 (Part-3) – 1983  
Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories: Wattmeters and Vaaaaameters.

(5) IS: 1248 (Part-4) – 2003  
Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories: Frequency meters.
Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories: Phase meters, power factor meters and synchroscope.

AC electricity meters: General requirements and tests.

AC electricity meters: Single-phase whole current watt-hour meters, class 2.

AC electricity meters: Three phase whole current and transformer operated and single phase transformer operated watt hour meters, class 2.

AC electricity meters: Volt-ampere hour meter for restricted power factor range, class 3.5

AC electricity meters: Volt-ampere hour meter for full power factor range: General requirements.

AC electricity meters: Single-phase 2 wire whole current watt hour meter (Class 1.0).

AC electricity meters: Three phase whole current and transformer operated Watt hour meters, and single phase two wire transformer operated watt hour meters (Class 1.0).

Maximum demand indicators.

Insulation resistance testers hand operated, (Magnetoe-generator type).

Current transformers: General Requirements.

Current transformers: Measuring current transformers.

Current transformers: Protective current transformers.
(4) IS: 2705 (Part-4) – 1992

Current transformers: Protective current transformers for specific purpose applications.

(5) IS: 6949 – 1973

Summation current transformers.

Fuses

(1) IS: 9224 (Part-1) – 1979

Low voltage fuses: General Requirements.

(2) IS: 9224 (Part-2) – 1979

Low voltage fuses: Supplementary requirements for fuses for industrial applications.

(3) IS: 2086 – 1993

Carriers and bases used in rewireable type electrical fuses upto 650 volts.

(4) IS: 9926 – 1981

Fuse wire used in rewireable type electric fuses upto 650 volts.

(5) IS: 8187 – 1976

D-Type fuses.

Miscellaneous

(1) IS: 2551- 1982

Danger notice plates

(2) IS: 2448 (Part-1) – 1963

Adhesive insulating tapes for electrical purposes: Tapes with cotton textile substrates.

Electrotechnical vocabulary

(1) IS: 1885 (Part-1) – 1961

Electrotechnical vocabulary: Fundamental definitions.

(2) IS: 1885 (Part-9) – 1986

Electrotechnical vocabulary: Electrical Relays.

(3) IS: 1885 (Part-11) – 1966

Electrotechnical vocabulary: Electrical measurements.

(4) IS: 1885 (Part-xvi/Sec. 1)

- 1968

Electrotechnical vocabulary: Lighting: General aspects.

(5) IS: 1885 (Part-xvi/Sec. 2)

- 1968

Electrotechnical vocabulary: Lighting: General illumination, lighting fittings and lighting for traffic and signaling.
(6) IS: 1885 (Part-16/Sec.3) - 1967
Electrotechnical vocabulary: Lighting:
Lamps and auxiliary apparatus.

(7) IS: 1885 (Part-17) - 1979
Electrotechnical vocabulary: Switchgear and controlgear.

(8) IS: 1885 (Part-32) - 1993
Electrotechnical vocabulary: Cables, conductors and accessories for electricity supply.

Safety

(1) IS: 4770 - 1991
Rubber gloves for electrical purposes.

(2) IS: 5424 - 1969
Rubber mats for electrical purposes.
APPENDIX – E

[Clauses 1.26] Use lamps instead of fluorescent lamps.

FORM OF COMPLETION CERTIFICATE

I/We certify that the installation detailed below has been installed by me/us and tested and that to the best of my/our knowledge and belief it complies with Indian Electricity Rules, 1956, as well as the C.P.W.D. General Specifications of Electrical Works 2004.

Electrical installation at ______________________________

Voltage and system of supply ______________________________

I. Particulars of work:

(a) Internal Electrical Installation

No. Total Load: Type or system of wiring

(i) Light point

(ii) Fan point

(iii) Plug Point

(a) 3 pin 5 Amp.

(b) 3 pin 15 Amp.

(b) Others

Description HP/KW Type of Starting

(a) Motors: (i) 

(ii) 

(iii) 

(b) Other plants:

(c) If the work involves installation of overhead line and/or underground cable.
(d) (i) Type & description of overhead line.

(ii) Total length and no. of spans.

(iii) No. of street lights and its description.

(b) (i) Total length of underground cable & its size.

(ii) No. of joints:

   End joint:

   Tee joint:

   St. through joint:

II. Earthing

(i) Description of earthing electrode.

(ii) No. of earth electrodes.

(iii) Size of main earth lead.

III. Test results:

(a) Insulation resistance

(i) Insulation resistance of the whole system of Conductors to earth

   Mega ohms

(ii) Insulation between the phase conductor and neutral

   Between Phase R and neutral

   Between Phase Y and neutral

   Between Phase B and neutral

   Mega ohms

(iii) Insulation resistance between the phase conductors in case of polyphase supply.

   Between Phase R and Phase Y

   Between Phase Y and Phase B

   Between Phase B and Phase R

   Mega ohms

126
(b) Polarity test

Power factor meter and spectroscope.

Polarity of won linked single pole branch switches.

(c) Earth continuity test

Maximum resistance between any point in the earth continuity conductor including metal conduits and main earthing lead ............ Ohms

(d) Earth electrode resistance

Resistance of each earth electrode

(i) .................. Ohms

(ii) ............. Ohms

(iii) ............ Ohms

(iv) ............ Ohms

(e) Lighting protective system

Resistance of the whole of lightning protective system to earth before any bonding is effected with earth electrode and metal in/on the structure .......

Ohms.

Signature and name of
Junior Engineer (E) / AE (E)

Signature and Name of the
Contractor

127
APPENDIX – F

[ Clause 8.0 ]

EARTHING

F-1 GENERAL

This Appendix indicates details useful in the design of earthing as applicable to the installations generally encountered in the Department. For complete details, IS: 3043-1987 shall be referred to. This Appendix shall supplement the requirements laid down in Chapter 8 of these specifications.

F-2 EARTHING REQUIREMENTS

F.2.1 Statutory Requirement

(i) All medium voltage equipments shall be earthed by two separate and distinct connections with earth. In the case of high and extra high voltages, the neutral points shall be earthed by not less than two separate and distinct connections with earth, each having its own electrode at the generating station or substation, and may be earthed at any other point, provided no interference is caused by such earthing. If necessary, the neutral may be earthed through suitable impedance.

(ii) Necessary protective device shall be provided against earth leakage.

F.2.2 Supply system requirement

“System Earthing” is provided to preserve the security of the supply system. This is done by limiting the potential of live conductors with reference to earth, to such values as consistent with the level of insulation applied. Earthing the neutral point of the transformer ensures reasonable potential to earth, including at the time when the HV supply is impressed on the transformer. Earthing also ensures efficient operation of protective gear in the case of earth faults. Earthing may not give protection against faults that are not essentially earth faults. For example, if a phase conductor on an overhead spur line breaks, and the part remote from the supply falls to the ground, it is unlikely that any protective gear relying on earthing, other than current balance protection at the substation, will operate, since the earth fault current circuit includes the impedance of the load that would be high relative to the rest of the circuit.

F.2.3 Installation protection requirement

“Equipment Earthing” is provided to ensure that the exposed conductive parts
in the installation do not become dangerous by attaining a high touch potential under conditions of faults. It should also carry the earth fault currents, till clearance by protective devices, without creating a fire hazard.

F.2.4 Special requirements

F.2.4.1 "Static Earthing" is provided to prevent building up of static charges, by connections to earth at appropriate locations. Example, operation theaters in hospitals. (For details, please refer to IS: 7689-1974 and the National Electrical Code).

F.2.4.2 "Clean Earth: may be needed for some of the data processing equipments. These are to be independent of any other earthing in the building. (For details, please refer to IS: 10422-1982 and IS: 3043-1987).

F.2.4.3 Earthing is essentially required in protection of buildings against lightning. (For details, please refer to chapter 9 and Appendix-I of these Specifications).

F.3 TYPES OF SYSTEM EARTHING

F.3.1 The various types of system earthing in practice are indicated below, out of which TN-S and T-TN-S systems are generally applicable to installations in the building.

F.3.1.1 TN-S system:

Neutral is earthed at source. In addition to the phase and neutral conductors, an independent protective earth (PE) conductor connected to the source earth is also run with the supply line. All the exposed conductive parts of an installation are connected to this PE conductor via the main earthing terminal of the installation. Independent earth electrode is also necessary within the consumer premises at the main earthing terminal.

F.3.1.2 TN-C system:

Neutral is earthed at source. No separate PE conductor is run with the supply line, nor in the internal installations, since neutral and PE are on a common conductor. All exposed conductive parts of an installation as well as the neutral line are connected to this PE&N conductor. (A CNE cable is used for wiring such installations). Additional earth electrode has to be provided for this conductor locally for 3 phase consumers.
F.3.1.3 TN-C-S system (Also called Protective Multiple Earthing – PME system):

Supply is as per TN-C system. The arrangement in the installations is as per TN-S system, i.e. The PE and N are combined in one conductor at supply line. This is earthed at source as well as at frequent intervals. There will be independent protective conductor in the installation. Consumer also normally provides earth electrode terminating on to main earth electrode in his installation, and this is in turn “linked” to the PE&N conductor from supply line. All the exposed conductive parts in the installation are connected to the PE&N conductor, through protective conductors and this main earthing terminal link.

F.3.1.4 T-TN-S system (for 6, 6.6 or 11 KV bulk supply):

No earth is provided with HV supply line, which is terminated in delta connected transformer primary. Neutral of the transformer (star connected) secondary is earthed. Independent earth electrodes and bus are provided for the body earthing. Protective conductors are run through out the LT distribution from the same for equipotential bonding.

F.3.1.5 TT system:

Neutral is earthed only at source and no PE conductor is given with supply line. All the exposed conductive parts of the installation are connected to an earth electrode at consumer end, which is independent of the source earth, electrically.

F.3.1.6 IT system:

The source has either no earth or is earthed through high impedance. All the exposed conductive parts of the installation are connected to an earth electrode, which is independent of the source earth, electrically.

F.3.2 Concept of protection against indirect contact.

F.3.2.1 The most commonly and successfully used method of protection against indirect contact is by “Earthed Equipotential bonding and automatic disconnection of supply”’” details of which are elaborated in IS: 732-1989 and IS: 3043-1987. All the exposed conductive parts are connected through protective (loop earthing) conductors to the main earthing terminal. All the extraneous conductive parts, which are simultaneously accessible with the exposed conductive parts, are also bonded to the main earthing terminal through
main bonding conductor so that there is no dangerous potential between the exposed and the extraneous conductive parts. The earth fault loop impedance (EFLI) and the characteristics of the tripping devices are coordinated such that the faulty circuit is automatically disconnected before there is a persistent touch voltage at the exposed conductive part over a period of time, causing a shock hazard. If the disconnecting time is not satisfactory due to large EFLI, supplementary bonding between the exposed and the extraneous conductive parts is provided. Alternatively, use of RCD’s becomes very relevant in most such situations. (See Appendix H for information on selection of RCD’s). For more details, IS: 3043-1987 may be referred to.

Note: Decision regarding the providing of RCD (RCCB) shall be taken in individual cases keeping in view the type, use, importance, system of earthing and nature of electrical installations to be protected by the RCD, requirements of the local Electric Supply Companies etc.

F.3.2.2 Earthing (comprising the electrode, earthing conductor, main earthing terminal etc.) and protective conductors in an installation are thus vital components in this system of protection against shock hazards. The concept is indicated diagrammatically in Fig. 14 & Fig. 15 indicates the method of ensuring the same, as envisaged in these specifications.

F.3.2.3 Rule 61A of I.E. Rules, 1956 calls for protective devices against earth leakages for certain loads. This should be complied with.

F.3.2.4 The following exposed conductive parts are exempted from bonding to earth.

(i) Overhead line insulator, wall brackets or another metal connected to them, provided they are out of arm’s reach.

(ii) Inaccessible steel reinforcement in RCC poles.

(iii) Exposed conductive parts that cannot be gripped or contacted by a major surface of the human body provided a protective conductor connection couldn’t be readily made, or reliably maintained.

(iv) Fixing screws of non-metallic parts provided there is no risk of them contacting live parts.

(v) Short lengths of conduits or similar items which are not accessible.

(vi) Metal enclosure for mechanical protection of double insulated equipments.
F.3.3. Selection of Type of Electrodes

Following are general guidelines for the selection of the type of electrodes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of electrode</th>
<th>Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GI pipe</td>
<td>Internal electrical installations like Distribution Board and Meter Boards (in residential quarters), feeder pillars and poles etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI plate</td>
<td>(i) For Fire fighting pumps and water supply pumps. (ii) Lightning conductors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper plate</td>
<td>Neutral earthing of transformers/generating sets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strip/Conductor</td>
<td>Locations where it is not possible to use other types.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

F.3.4. Number of Earth Electrodes.

(i) In all cases, relevant provisions of Rules 33, 61 and 67 of the Indian Electricity Rules, 1956 as amended, shall be complied with.

(ii) Non-current carrying metal parts of all apparatus utilizing power supply at voltage exceeding 250 volts shall be earthed by two separate and distinct connections to the earth bus, or to two separate and distinct earthing sets.

(iii) The number of earthing electrodes for substations and generating sets shall be as under:-

- For neutral earthing of each transformer: 2 sets
- For body earthing of all the transformers, HT/LT Panels and other electrical equipments in the Substation/power house: 2 sets
- For neutral earthing of each generating set: 2 sets
- For body earthing of all the generating sets, LT panels and other electrical equipments in the generator room: 2 sets
Where the generator and substation equipments are located together in the same building, the body earthing can be common for all the electrical equipments in the building.

(iv) Separate earth electrodes shall be provided for lightning arrester / lightning conductors.

F.3.5 Size of protective conductor.

F.3.5.1 The cross section of a protective conductor may be calculated by either of the following 2 methods, the second one being used for designs in general, and the first one for checking purposes.

\[
(i) \quad S \geq \frac{I^2 t}{K}
\]

Where, \( S = \) Cross sectional area of protective conductor in sq.mm.
\( I = \) Earth fault (Leakage) current in Amp.
\( t = \) Total tripping time of the device in sec. (not exceeding 5 sec)
\( k = \) Factor dependent on the material of the protective conductor insulation if any thereon, and initial and final temperatures.

\[
I = \frac{U_o}{Z_s}
\]

where, \( U_o = \) Nominal phase voltage to earth.
\( Z_s = \) Earth fault loop impedance, (considering its 5 seconds value).

Note 1: Values of \( Z_s \) are available in Tables in IEE wiring Regulations, UK, dependent on tripping devices. Alternatively, this can be calculated.

Note 2: Values of \( K \) for different materials are given in IS: 3043 for various parameters.

(ii) The minimum shall be as per the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of phase conductor</th>
<th>Size of protective conductor of the same material as phase conductor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

133
S up to 16 sq.mm. \[ S \] S sq.mm.
S = 16 to 35 sq.mm. \[ 16 \text{ sq.mm.} \]
S > 35 sq.mm \[ S/2 \text{ sq.mm.} \]

Note: If the material of the protective conductor is different from that of the phase conductor, the size as per the above should be multiplied by K1/K2 where K1 is the K factor for phase conductor material, and K2 for the protective conductor material. As a rough guide, the following values can be taken.

K1/K2 for

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Copper} & \quad = 1.20 \text{ to } 1.24 \\
\text{Aluminium (Insulated)} & \\
\text{Copper} & \quad = 2.17 \text{ to } 2.25 \\
\text{Steel wire (Insulated)} & \\
\text{Copper} & \quad = 2.31 \text{ to } 2.45 \\
\text{Steel (Conduits/Trunking)} & 
\end{align*} \]

F.3.5.2 The minimum acceptable size of a protective conductor shall be 2.5 sq.mm. if protected mechanically, and 4 sq.mm. if otherwise.

F.3.6 Size of Earthing Conductor.

F.3.6.1 The earthing conductors shall comply with the provisions of clause 3.5 above, except that the minimum cross sectional area shall be 16 sq.mm. (Copper or steel) when protected against corrosion, and 25 sq.mm. copper, or 50 sq.mm. steel when not protected against corrosion.

F.3.6.2 For determining the size of earthing conductor for substations and generating sets, IS: 3043-1987 may be referred to.

F.3.7 Size of Bonding Conductor

The main bonding conductor should be half the size of the earthing conductor, subject to a minimum of 6 sq.mm. and maximum of 25 sq.mm. copper, or equivalent sizes for other materials. This is applicable for TN-S and TN-C-S system only.

F.3.8 Details for contract purposes.

While this Appendix provides information on design considerations, the sizes of the conductors, types of electrodes etc. shall be as laid down in the tender documents of individual works, and as directed by the Engineer-in-Charge.
APPENDIX - G

[Clause 8.7 & F.3.2.1]

GUIDELINES FOR SELECTION AND APPLICATION OF RCCBs (RCDs)

G.0 GENERAL

G.0.1 IS 732-1989 recognizes two forms of shock hazard, 'Indirect contact' and 'Direct contact'. The objective is to achieve safety to personnel and property through the best possible means in the most economic manner.

G.0.2 The most commonly used protective measure against indirect contact is termed "main equipotential bonding and automatic disconnection of supply". Irrespective of the type of protective device used, the aim is to prevent dangerous 'touch voltages' persisting on accessible conductive parts which become live under earth fault conditions. Use of RCCBs is only one of the means that would provide automatic disconnection of supply in the event of shock hazard. The use of RCCB is not considered, as a sole means of protection and it does not obviate the need to apply other protective measures. Some broad guidelines are provided in this Appendix on these issues.

G.1 RESIDUAL CURRENT OPERATED CIRCUIT BREAKER (RCCB):

G.1.1 In general, every circuit is provided with a means of over current protection. If the earth fault loop impedance is low enough to cause these devices to operate within the specified times, such devices can be relied upon to give the requisite automatic disconnection of supply. Where the earth fault loop impedance is too large, efforts are required to make it low enough. Guidelines are available in IS: 3043-1987. When protection against indirect contact is decided to be provided by RCCB, IS: 732-1989 prescribes that the product of its rated residual current (rated tripping current) in amperes and the earth loop impedance in ohms should not exceed the value 50.

G.1.2 Fault voltage operated circuit breakers (voltage operated FLCB) are not preferred devices against shock protection. This Appendix covers only truly current-operated devices. These are of different types. The following are the two main types:

(a) Residual current devices not dependent on line voltage, and

(b) Residual current devices dependent on line voltage.
G.2 CHOICE OF RCCBs

G.2.0 Where RCCBs are required to be used for affording shock protection; there are several broad parameters that are required to be carefully chosen. These are described in the following clauses.

G.2.1 Location:

RCCB can be used as a protective measure to the entire installation, or part, or to an item of equipment. This is determined by the security of supply desired in certain parts of the same installation when RCCB operates. Where only one RCCB is being employed to protect the entire installation, it is necessary that it is located at the main distribution board, at the origin of the installation.

G.2.2 Type of RCCB:

RCCBs are suitable in general for various applications. However, devices suitable for household applications are to be verified for additional requirements as given in this Appendix. RCCB that has its automatic opening intentionally delayed may be preferred under certain circumstances. Portable RCCBs may be necessary especially in situations where portable/mobile equipment pose a shock hazard against which other suitable means of protection are not available. Portable RCCBs are required to be tested (using the test button) each time they are used.

G.2.3 Rated current:

The ISS restricts the rated current of the device to an order of magnitude of 125 A. Use of RCCB in circuits of higher rated currents is not envisaged for the time being.

G.2.4 Rated tripping current:

(i) The preferred rated currents of RCCBs are 10, 30, 100 and 300 mA. RCCBs having minimum operating currents of 30 mA are intended to give protection against ‘indirect contact’. RCCB having minimum operating currents of 30 mA and below are generally referred to as having ‘high sensitivity’ and can give protection against ‘direct contact’ in case of failure of other protective measures. It is essential that an RCCB is not used as a sole means for protection against direct contact.

(ii) It is emphasized that the value of leakage current that can flow before the RCCB has operated can be higher than the rated tripping current, the actual value being determined by the impedance of the circuit on which the fault occurs. The rated tripping current is a value assigned by the manufacturer at
which the RCCB opens under specified conditions. While the speed of operation will not be significantly affected by the value of leakage current, RCCB can open at any value between 50 to 100 percent of the rated tripping current.

(iii) The RCCB should be chosen as to have the lowest suitable tripping current. Lower the tripping current, the greater is the degree of protection afforded. Nevertheless, it would introduce the possibility of nuisance tripping and may also become unnecessarily expensive. The minimum operating current will, therefore, have to be above any standing leakage that may be unavoidable in the installation.

G.2.4.1 Discrimination:

When more than one RCCB is required to be used by grading the sensitivities, it is possible to achieve discrimination amongst RCCB in the same circuit. Discrimination may also be achieved by selectively employing devices having their tripping times intentionally delayed.

G.2.4.2 Type of system earthing:

The choice of right sensitivity of RCCB would also be determined by the type of earthing system adopted in the installation. The vectorial sum of leakage currents of equipment supplied by an installation or part of an installation by an RCCB shall be less than one half of the rated residual operating current of the device and it may be necessary to sub-divide the earthing arrangement for this reason. Reference is also invited to IS: 3043-1987 “Code of practice for earthing”, which gives guidelines on the use of RCCB for different types of system earthing.

G.2.5 Breaking capacity:

(i) When using RCCBs, it is necessary to assess the prospective current value in the location where it is likely to be installed and ensure that where higher withstanding or breaking capacities are desirable, suitable back-up protection is available in the system. This could be by means of a fuse or another circuit breaker (MCB), which is in series with the RCCB. The over current / short circuit protective device is then said to provide back-up protection for the RCCB. Alternatively, RCCBs with integral over current/short circuit protection could be employed.

(ii) In practice, the functions of RCCB and that of the over current/short circuit protective device in series may tend to overlap and under certain conditions both may attempt to clear the fault. This may occur, for example, when a severe earth fault produces a current of similar magnitude to that under short
circuit conditions, or when an earth fault and short circuit occur simultaneously. Another possible cause is the inherent out of balance in the primary windings of the balance transformer causing the RCCB to trip. Care is, therefore, necessary to be exercised in ensuring that RCCB is coordinated with over current devices.

G.2.6 Neutral grounding or failure:

Use of RCCBs assumes adequate care in wiring and earthing design. Use of RCCB is not a sole means of affording shock protection. Attention should be given to bonding and choosing the right cross-sectional area of the conductors, specially the protective conductor. Different types of RCCBs in different circuits may react differently to the presence of a neutral to earth fault on the load side. Such a fault together with the earthing of the supply at the neutral point will constitute a shunt across the neutral winding on the RCCB transformer. Consequently a part of the neutral load current will be shunted away and this may result in the device tripping. On the other hand, the shunting may result in reduced sensitivity and prevent its tripping in general. Therefore, care should be taken to avoid neutral to ground fault when RCCBs are in use. In the event of the neutral failure on the supply side, the RCCB should either open automatically, or is of such a design that it remains functional.

G.3 GUIDELINES FOR SPECIFIC OCCUPANCIES OR LOCATIONS:

G.3.1 Household and similar installations.

The rated tripping current of RCCBs for use in household and similar installation shall not exceed 30 mA. Use of devices with intentional time delay is not recommended.

G.3.2 Locations containing bath tub/shower basin and swimming pools:

Where socket outlets and other appliances are to be protected by RCCB, the rated tripping current shall not exceed 30 mA.

G.3.3 Where individual socket outlets are required to be protected by RCCB, the rated tripping current shall not exceed 30 mA.

G.3.4 Industrial installations

For industrial installations, use of RCCB would be dependent upon already available devices capable of offering protection against harmful earth leak-
ages. For example, use of a separate RCCB may not be necessary for installations equipped with protective devices with in-built releases initiating trip signals due to harmful earth leakages. Similarly, individual or group of motors otherwise adequately protected need not be provided additional protection through RCCBs.

G.3.5 Data processing installations / industrial control / telecommunication equipment.

Radio frequency interference suppression filters fitted to these equipments may produce high earth leakages. Failure of the protective earth connection may cause a dangerous touch voltage. Use of RCCBs under such circumstances should be carefully considered owing to their frequent tripping, besides capacitor charging currents at switching on shall have to be considered. Under such circumstances, where leakages exceed 10 mA, one of the three measures given below may be necessary:

(a) Use of high integrity protective earth circuits by robust or duplicate conductors,

(b) Earth continuity monitoring, or provision for automatic disconnection when earth continuity fails, or

(c) Use of double wound transformers to enable localization of path of leakage and minimize the possibility of breakages.

G.3.6 The presence of generating sets within an installation may change the conditions of application of RCCB. The contribution to the prospective short circuit current by the generating set should be taken into account.

G.3.7 Medical establishment and electrical installations in hazardous locations-

The use of RCCB and their selection in such installations has to be carefully considered. Reference is invited to SP 30: 1985, "National Electrical Code".
APPENDIX - H

[Clause 9.0]

PRINCIPLES OF PROTECTION OF BUILDING AGAINST LIGHTNING

H.1 This appendix shall supplement the requirements in Chapter 9 of these specifications.

H.2 INTRODUCTION

H.2.1 Protection of special structures, such as those exceeding 30 m in height, structures with roofs of high inflammability, buildings with explosive or highly inflammable contents, fences, trees and structures near trees, structures supporting overhead electricity supply, telephone and other lines, structures with radio and television aerials, tents, metal scaffolding and similar structures, tall metal masts, tower cranes and revolving and travelling structures, farm buildings in areas of high lightning incidence, sports stadium, raised motorways, bridges, dwelling houses, etc. shall be strictly done in accordance with IS: 2309-1989. These are not covered in these specifications.

H.2.2 These specifications are confined only to all other structures, and which have no inherent explosive risks. The need for protection in such structures maybe self-evident, for example.

(a) Where large numbers of people congregate,
(b) Where essential public services are concerned,
(c) Where much lightning strokes are prevalent,
(d) Where there are very tall or isolated structures,
(e) Where there are structures of historic or cultural importance, etc.

However, there can be cases for which a decision is not so easy to make. Various factors affecting the risk of being struck, and the consequential effects of a lightning stroke in these cases are discussed below.

H.3. NEED FOR PROTECTION

H.3.1 Estimation of exposure risk
(i) The probability of a structure, or a building being struck by lightning in one year is the product of the "lightning flash density", and the "effective collection area" of the structure.

(ii) The lightning flash density, \( N_g \), is the number of flashes to ground per sq.km. per year. The annual thunderstorm days for certain selected cities are given in Appendix I. These are to be translated in terms of estimated average annual density \( N_g \). The table below indicates the relationship between the thunderstorm days per year and lightning flashes per square kilometer per year.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Days/year</th>
<th>Mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iii) The effective collection area of a structure is the area on the plan of the structure extended in all directions to take account of its height. The edge of the effective collection area is displaced from the edge of the structure by an amount equal to the height of the structure at that point. Hence, for a simple rectangular building of length \( L \), width \( W \), and height \( H \) meters, the collection area has length \( (L + 2H) \) meters, and width \( (W + 2H) \) meters, with four rounded corners formed by quarter circles of radius, \( H \) meters. This gives a collection area, \( A_c \) (in sq.m) of:

\[ A_c = (L \times W) + 2(L \times H) + 2(W \times H) + (22/7) \times H^2 \] — (1)

(iv) The probable number of strikes (risk) to the structure per year is:

\[ P = A_c \times N_g \times 10^{-6} \] — (2)

(iv) It must first be decided whether this risk \( P \) is acceptable, or whether some measure of protection is necessary.

H.3.2 Suggested acceptable risk.
The acceptable risk figure has been taken as \( 10^{-5} \), i.e. 1 in 100,000 per year.
H.3.3 Overall assessment of risk.

The weighting factors for evaluating the overall assessment of risk are given in Tables 1A to 1E in Appendix K. It must be seen whether the value of \( P \) [see (2) under H.3.1 (iv)] multiplied by the appropriate weighting factors exceeds the acceptable risk of \( P = 10^{-5} \) per year.

H.3.4 Weighting Factor

In Tables 1A to 1E in Appendix-J, the weighting factor values are given, denoting a relative degree of importance or risk in each case. The tables are mostly self-explanatory. The term consequential effect in Table 1C is intended to cover not only material risks to goods and property, but also such aspects as the disruption of essential services of all kinds, particularly in hospitals, where if a lighting strikes, fire or panic can naturally result.

H.3.5 Interpretation of overall risk factor

The risk factor given herein is to be taken as giving guidance on what might, in some cases, be a difficult problem. If the result obtained is considerably less than \( 10^{-5} \) (1 in 100,000), then in the absence of other over-riding considerations, protection does not appear necessary. If the result is greater than \( 10^{-5} \), say for example \( 10^{-4} \) (1 in 10,000) then sound reasons would be needed to support a decision not to give protection.

H.3.6 Anomalies

(i) Structures are so varied that any method of assessment may lead to anomalies, and those who have to decide on protection must exercise judgement. For example, a steel-framed building may be found to have a low risk factor but, as the addition of an air termination and earthing system will greatly improve protection, the cost of providing this may be considered worthwhile.

(ii) A low risk factor may result for chimneys made of brick or concrete. However where chimneys are free standing, or where they project more than 4.5 m above the adjoining structure, they will require protection regardless of the factor. Such chimneys are, therefore, not covered by the method of assessment. Similarly, structures containing explosives or flammable substance are also not covered.
H.3,7 Sample calculation of need for protection

A sample calculation for a hospital building is given in Appendix K for guidance.

H.4 PRINCIPLE OF PROTECTION

(i) The principle for protection of buildings against lightning is to provide a conducting path between earth and the atmosphere above the building through which the lightning discharge may enter the earth without causing damage to the building. If adequately earthed metal parts of proper proportions are provided and spread properly on and around the building, damage can be largely prevented.

(ii) The required conditions of protection are generally met by placing all the air terminals, whether in the form of vertical finials or horizontal conductors, on the uppermost part of the buildings or its projections, with lightning conductors connecting the air terminals with each other and to the earth.

H.5 ZONE OF PROTECTION

H.5.1 General

The zone of protection is the volume within which a lightning conductor gives protection against a direct lightning stroke by directing the stroke to itself. For a vertical conductor rising from ground level, the zone is described as a cone with its apex at the tip of the conductor and its base on the ground. For a horizontal conductor, the zone is defined as the volume generated by a cone with its apex on the horizontal conductor from end to end.

H.5.2 Protective angle

(i) This cannot be precisely stated, since it depends upon the severity of the stroke and the presence within the protective zone of conducting objects providing independent paths to the earth. All that can be stated is that the protection afforded by a lightning conductor increases as the assumed protective angle decreases.

(ii) (a) However, for the practical purpose of providing an “acceptable degree” of protection for an ordinary structure, the protective angle of any single component part of an air termination network, namely, either one vertical, or one horizontal conductor is considered to be 45 degrees.
(b) Between three or more vertical conductors, spaced at a distance not exceeding twice their height, the equivalent protective angle may, as an exception, be taken as 60 degrees to the vertical.

(iii) Protective angles of zones of protection for some forms of air termination are illustrated in IS: 2309-1989.

H.5.3 Structures of exceptional vulnerability.

For structures of exceptional vulnerability by reason of explosive or highly inflammable contents, every possible protection may need to be provided, even against the rare occurrence of a lightning discharge striking within the protected zone. For this reason, a reduced zone of protection and other special measures should be taken as detailed in IS: 2309-1989.

H.6 COMPONENTS

H.6.1 Air terminations

(i) Air termination networks may consist of vertical or horizontal conductors, or combinations of both.

(ii) For the purpose of lightning protection, the vertical and horizontal conductors are considered equivalent and the use of pointed air terminations, or vertical finial is, therefore, not regarded as essential.

H.6.2 Down conductors

(i) General

The function of a down conductor is to provide a low impedance path from the air termination to the earth electrode so that lightning current can be safely conducted to the earth. In practice, depending upon the form of a building, it is often necessary to have many down conductors in parallel, some or all of which may be a part of the building structure itself.

(ii) Recommended number

The position and spacing of down conductors on large structures are often governed by architectural convenience. However, recommendations for their number are given below:
(i) A structure having a base area not exceeding 100 sq.m. need have only one down conductor, except when built on a bare rock, or where access for testing is difficult.

(ii) For a structure having a base area exceeding 100 sq.m. the number of down conductors should be at least the smaller of the following:

(a) One plus an additional one for each 300 sq.m., or a part thereof, in excess of the first 100 sq.m.

(b) One for each 30 m of the perimeter of the structure protected.

(iii) Tall structures presenting inspection difficulties.

For tall structures, where testing and inspection could be difficult, at least two down conductors will be required for such tests.

H.7 ILLUSTRATIONS

The IS: 2309-1989 shows several arrangements for air terminations, down conductors, voltage gradient along ground surface near to masts, towers, columns and single down conductors, re-entrant loops, typical joints, earth termination, bonding to building services, fixing of lightning conductors, test points, typical forms of vertical air terminations, etc. which may be referred to.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Name of place</th>
<th>Annual thunderstorm days</th>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Name of place</th>
<th>Annual thunderstorm days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Chloht</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Kanpur</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Sagar</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Fatehpur</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Srinagar</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Allahabad</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Dras</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Varanasi</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Kargil</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Azamgarh</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Leh</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Gorakhpur</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Jammu</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Kathmandu</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Dharamsala</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Motihari</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Amritsar</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Darbhanga</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Pathankot</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Patna</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Mahoi</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>55.</td>
<td>Gaya</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Ludhiana</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Daltonganj</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Shimla</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Hazari Bagh</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Patiala</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Ranchi</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Ambala</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Chaibassa</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>Hisar</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Jamshedpur</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Delhi</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Purnea</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Phalodi</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Dumka</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Sikar</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Darjeeling</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Barmer</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Jalpaiguri</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Mount Abu</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Kolkata</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>Udaipur</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Sagar Island</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Neemuch</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>72.</td>
<td>Dhubri</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Kota</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Tezpur</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Jhalawar</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Dibrugarh</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Mussoorie</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Sibsagar</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Roorkee</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>76.</td>
<td>Shilong</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Moradabad</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Cheerapunji</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Mukteshwar</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Silchar</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Meerut</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>79.</td>
<td>Kohnia</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Bareilly</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>80.</td>
<td>Imphal</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Aliagar</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>81.</td>
<td>Deesa</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Agra</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Dwarka</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Mainpuri</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Jannagar</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Bharach</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Rajkot</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Gonda</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Ahmedabad</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Lucknow</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Dohad</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sl. No.</td>
<td>Name of place</td>
<td>Annual thunderstorm days</td>
<td>Sl. No.</td>
<td>Name of place</td>
<td>Annual thunderstorm days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Porbandar</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>136.</td>
<td>Miraj</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Veraval</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>137.</td>
<td>Vengurla</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89.</td>
<td>Bhavnagar</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>138.</td>
<td>Nizamabad</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Vadodara</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>139.</td>
<td>Hanamkonda</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Surat</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>140.</td>
<td>Hyderabad</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>Gwalior</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>141.</td>
<td>Khamma</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Guna</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>142.</td>
<td>Kalingapatnam</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94.</td>
<td>Nowgong</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>143.</td>
<td>Vishakapatnam</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Satna</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>144.</td>
<td>Rentichintala</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96.</td>
<td>Sagar</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>145.</td>
<td>Machhilipatnam</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Bhopal</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>146.</td>
<td>Ongole</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Jabalpur</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>147.</td>
<td>Kurnool</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Umaria</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>148.</td>
<td>Anantapur</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Ambikapur</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>149.</td>
<td>Nellore</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101.</td>
<td>Indore</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>150.</td>
<td>Bidar</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>Hoshangabad</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>151.</td>
<td>Gulbarga</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103.</td>
<td>Panchmarhi</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>152.</td>
<td>Bijapur</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>Seoni</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>153.</td>
<td>Belgaum</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>Penda Dam</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>154.</td>
<td>Raichur</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>Raipur</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>155.</td>
<td>Gadag</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>Chindara</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>156.</td>
<td>Bellari</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>Balasore</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>159.</td>
<td>Chikalthana</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>Chandbali</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>160.</td>
<td>Mangalore</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>Angul</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>161.</td>
<td>Hassan</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113.</td>
<td>Bhubaneswar</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>162.</td>
<td>Bangalore</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>Puri</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>163.</td>
<td>Mysore</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Gopalpur</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>164.</td>
<td>Hozhmoode</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Sambalpur</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>165.</td>
<td>Palghat</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>Jharsuguda</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>166.</td>
<td>Cochin</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>Titlagarh</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>167.</td>
<td>Alleppy</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>119.</td>
<td>Rajgangpur</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>168.</td>
<td>Trivandrum</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>Damaun</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>169.</td>
<td>Vellore</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>Nasik</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>170.</td>
<td>Madras</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>Melegaon</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>171.</td>
<td>Ootacamund</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Akola</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>172.</td>
<td>Salem</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Nagpur</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>174.</td>
<td>Coimbatore</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Gonda</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>175.</td>
<td>Tiruchirapalli</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>Aurangabad</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>176.</td>
<td>Nagapatnam</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>Mumbai</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>177.</td>
<td>Kodaikanal</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Alibag</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>178.</td>
<td>Madurai</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>Ahmednagar</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>179.</td>
<td>Pamban</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131.</td>
<td>Parbhani</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>180.</td>
<td>Tuticorin</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.</td>
<td>Pune</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>181.</td>
<td>Kanyakumari</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>133.</td>
<td>Mahabaleshwar</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>182.</td>
<td>Port Blair</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>134.</td>
<td>Ratnagiri</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>183.</td>
<td>Car Nicobar I</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>135.</td>
<td>Sholapur</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>184.</td>
<td>Minicoy</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

147
APPENDIX – J

[Clause H.3.4]

WEIGHTING FACTORS FOR OVERALL ASSESSMENT OF RISK FOR LIGHTNING PROTECTIVE SYSTEM

Table 1A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use to which structure is put</th>
<th>Value of ‘A’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Houses and other buildings of comparable size</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Houses and other buildings of comparable size with outside aerial</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factories, workshops, and laboratories</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office Blocks, hotels, blocks of flats and other residential buildings other than those included below</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Places of assembly, for example, churches, halls, theaters, museums, exhibitions, departmental stores, post offices, stations, airports, and stadium structures.</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schools, hospitals, children’s and other homes</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of construction</th>
<th>Value of ‘B’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steel framed encased with any roof other than metal*</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced concrete with any roof other than metal</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel framed encased or reinforced concrete with metal roof</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brick, plain concrete or masonry with any roof other than metal or thatch</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber framed or clad with any roof other than metal or thatch</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brick, plain concrete, masonry, timber framed but with metal roofing</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any building with a thatched roof</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* A structure of exposed metal, which is continuous down to ground level, is excluded from these tables, as it requires no lightning protection beyond adequate earthing arrangement.
### Table 1C

**Weighting factor ‘C’ (Contents or consequential effects)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents or consequential effects</th>
<th>Value of ‘C’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ordinary domestic or office buildings, factories and workshops not containing valuable or specially susceptible contents</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial and agricultural buildings with specially susceptible* contents</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power stations, gas works, telephone exchange, radio stations</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Industrial key plants, ancient monuments and historic buildings, museums, art galleries or other buildings with specially valuable contents</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schools, hospitals, children’s and other places of assembly</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This means specially valuable plant or materials vulnerable to fire or the results of fire.*

### Table 1D

**Weighting factor ‘D’ (Degree of isolation)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree of isolation</th>
<th>Value of ‘D’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Structure located in a large area of structures or trees of the same or greater height, for example, in a large town or forest</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure located in an area with few other structures or trees of similar height</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure completely isolated or exceeding at least twice the height of surrounding structures or trees.</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of country</th>
<th>Value of ‘E’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flat country at any level</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill country</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain country between 300m and 900m</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain country above 900m</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1E

*Weighting factor ‘E’ (Type of country)*
APPENDIX – K

SAMPLE CALCULATION OF NEED FOR PROTECTION WITH A LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM

A hospital building is 10 m high and covers an area of 70 m x 12 m. The hospital is located in flat country and is isolated from other structures. The construction is of brick and concrete with a non-metallic roof. Is lightning protection needed?

a) Flashes/sq.km/year – Let us say, for the protection of the hospital a value for \( N_g \) is 0.7.

b) Collection area – Using equation (1) in H.3.1. (iii)

\[
A_c = (70 \times 12) + 2(70 \times 10) + 2(12 \times 10) + (22/7 \times 100)
\]
\[
= 840 + 1400 + 240 + 314
\]
\[
= 2794 \text{ sq.m.}
\]

c) Probability of being struck – Using equation (2) in H.3.1. (iv):

\[
P = A_c \times N_g \times 10^6 \text{ times per year}
\]
\[
= 2794 \times 0.7 \times 10^6
\]
\[
= 2.0 \times 10^3 \text{ approximately.}
\]

d) Applying the weighting factors

\[
A = 1.7 \\
B = 0.8 \\
C = 1.7 \\
D = 2.0 \\
E = 0.3
\]

The overall multiplying factor = \( A \times B \times C \times D \times E \)

= 1.7

Therefore, the overall risk factor = \( 2.0 \times 1.7 \times 10^{-3} \)

= \( 3.4 \times 10^{-3} \)

Conclusion: Protection is necessary.
Table 1

Chart showing the distance up to which different sizes of UG Aluminium Conductor cables can be used for different current ratings for 8 Volts drop when laid in ground (PVC insulated, PVC sheathed, 3 core or 4 core) when cable grading is 1.1 KV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No.</th>
<th>Current</th>
<th>Distance in mtrs for the following cable sizes in sqmm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amp</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1: PVC Insulated electrical cable for voltage grade upto 1.1KV is based on 8 volts drop

1 This table is based on current and resistance as given in M/s Incab's Cable and table (April 1964, Table No. 17 and 33)
2 The distances are given in meters and after rounding.
3 The condition of installation of cable is ground temp. 15 degree C.

Note 2 For Temperature Correction please see as detailed below

1 When the voltage drop and length is constant then to find the size of cable for following current ratings of the chart to obtain the calculated load current by the following factors and then see the size according to that ratings which was multiplied by the temperature factor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ground Temp:</th>
<th>20 Degree C</th>
<th>25 Degree C</th>
<th>30 Degree C</th>
<th>35 Degree C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rating Factors:</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

152
### TABLE 2

CURRENT RATING (IN GROUND) FOR XLPE INSULATED
1.1 KV GRADE CABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominal Area of the Conductor (mm²)</th>
<th>Aluminium Conductor</th>
<th>Copper Conductor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PVC</td>
<td>XLPE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>175</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>630</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>685</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### RATING FACTORS FOR VARIATION IN AMBIENT AIR TEMPERATURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>45</th>
<th>50</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rating Factor (XLPE)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rating Factor (PVC)</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE 3

**PERMISSIBLE MAXIMUM SHORT-CIRCUIT CURRENT RATINGS FOR XLPE CABLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conductor Area Sq.mm.</th>
<th>Short Circuit ratings for one second duration</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copper Conductors</td>
<td>Aluminium Conductors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>2570</td>
<td>1730</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>3970</td>
<td>2670</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>5500</td>
<td>3690</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>7800</td>
<td>5220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>10850</td>
<td>7400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>14600</td>
<td>9740</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>18400</td>
<td>12200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>23000</td>
<td>15200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>28200</td>
<td>18700</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>36400</td>
<td>24200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>45300</td>
<td>30100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>60200</td>
<td>39900</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>74800</td>
<td>49800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>630</td>
<td>92700</td>
<td>62000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td>78800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td></td>
<td>97800</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Initial conductor temperature - 90 Deg. C  
Final conductor temperature - 250 Deg. C

For durations other than one second the short circuit current may be calculated from the following formula:

\[
I_{sc} = \sqrt{\frac{I}{t}}
\]

Where \( I_{sc} \) - Short circuit current during time \( t \), amperes.

\( I \) - Short circuit current during the time one second as given in above table.

\( t \) - Short circuit current duration, seconds.

Note: For large currents the force between the conductors must be considered especially when single core cable are used.
Based on the tripping characteristics, MCBs are available in 'B' and 'C' curve to suit different types of applications.

'B' Curve: For protection of electric circuits with equipment that does not cause surge current (lighting and socket outlet circuits)
Short circuit release is set to 3 – 5 ln

'C' Curve: For protection of electric circuits with equipment that cause surge current (inductive and motor circuits)
Short circuit release is set to 5 – 10 ln

'D' Curve: For protection of electric circuits which cause high inrush current when they are switched ON, typically 15 times the normal running current (Transformers, Heavy Start Motors, 2 Pole Motors)
Short circuit release is set to 10 – 20 ln
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Utilization Category</th>
<th>Typical Applications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC20/DC20</strong></td>
<td>Connecting and disconnecting under no-load. Assumes all switching operations are carried out by other applicable devices before this device is operated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC21/DC21</strong></td>
<td>Switching of resistive loads including moderate overloads. Suitable for purely resistive type loads. Device can switch 150% of its rated current under fault conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC22/DC22</strong></td>
<td>Switching of mixed resistive/Inductive loads, including moderate overloads. Suitable for mixed resistive/inductive loads. Devices can switch 300% of its rated current under fault conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AC23/DC23</strong></td>
<td>Switching of highly inductive loads. Devices complying with AC23/DC23 are provided mainly as backup to other means of switching. Eg. Contacts. In the event of failure of functional devices, an AC23/DC23 type device can safely interrupt a stalled motor current. Where devices are the only means of controlling individual motors, they should comply with the requirements of appendix A of the standard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Max. Operating Temp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>90°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>105°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>120°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>130°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>155°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>180°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Above 180°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 7

FIRE PROTECTION

**Class of Fire**
- Class B: Fires involving Oil, Petrol, Solvent, Grease, Paints, Celluloid and the like.
- Class C: Fires involving Electrical Hazards, Motor Vehicle Gaseous substance under pressure.
- Class D: Fires involving Chemicals, Metal and active like.
- Class E: Fires involving Electrical equipment, Delicate machinery and the like.

**Mode of Fire Protection**
1. Sand/Water buckets
2. Sand/Water buckets
3. Dry/Wet Hydrant risers
4. Heat/Smoke Detectors
5. Automatic/Manual Fire Alarm
6. Sprinklers
7. Lightning Conductors
8. Fire Dampers in AC Ducts
9. Fire Doors with fusible link
10. Pressurization Plant
11. Public Address System
12. Fire Escapes/External Stairs

**Coverage (Floor) Area**
1. Water/Sand Bucket 100 sq.m. 4. Sprinklers 6 sq.m.
2. Extinguishers (9 lts) 600 sq.m. 5. Heat Detectors 16 sq.m.
3. Hydrant Riser (Outlet 100mm dia) 100 sq.m. 6. Smoke Detectors 50 sq.m. 100 sq.m. (For a ceiling height of 3 mts. and clean environment)
   with landing valve and first aid hose reel)

**Choice of Extinguishers**
1. Soda Acid Type Class – A
2. Foam Type Class – B
3. Dry Chemical Powder Type Class – B, C, D & E
4. Carbon-di-oxide Type Class – B, C & E
5. Water Carbon-di-oxide Type Class – A
6. Carbo-Tetra-Chloride Type Class – C

**Water Requirement for the Fire Fighting**

\[
Q = 3000 \, P
\]

\[
Q = \text{Fire demand in Liters/Minutes}
P = \text{Population in Thousands}
\]

Note: The above rate must be maintained at a minimum pressure of 1 to 1.5 kg/Cm² for at least four hours.
### TABLE 8

**Degrees of Protection to DIN 40 050 and to IEC 144.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First characteristic numeral</th>
<th>Degree of protection against contact with live parts and the ingress of foreign bodies</th>
<th>Second characteristic numeral</th>
<th>Degree of protection against water</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No protection of persons against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure. No protection of equipment against ingress of solid foreign bodies.</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Protection against accidental or inadvertent contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure body. Large surface of the human body as, for example, a hand, but no protection against deliberate access to such parts. Protection against ingress of large solid foreign bodies of diameters greater than 50 mm.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Protection against drops of condensate. Drops of condensate falling vertically on the enclosure shall have no harmful effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Protection against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure by fingers. Protection against ingress of medium size solid foreign bodies of diameters greater than 12 mm.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Protection against drops of other liquids. Drops of falling liquid shall have no harmful effect when the enclosure is tilted at any angle up to 15° from the vertical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protection against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure by tools, wires or such objects of thickness greater than 2.5mm. Protection against ingress of small solid foreign bodies of diameters greater than 2.5mm.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Protection against rain: Water falling as rain at an angle equal to or less than 60° with respect to the vertical shall have no harmful effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Protection against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure by tools, wires or such objects of thickness greater than 1mm. Protection against ingress of small solid foreign bodies of diameters greater than 1mm.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Protection against splashing liquid: Liquid splashed from any direction shall have no harmful effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Complete protection against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure. Protection against harmful deposits of dust. The ingress of dust is not totally prevented, but dust cannot enter in an amount sufficient to interfere with the satisfactory operation of the equipment enclosed.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Protection against water-jets: Water projected by a nozzle from any direction under stated conditions shall have no harmful effect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Complete protection against contact with live or moving parts inside the enclosure. Protection against ingress of dust.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Protection against conditions on ships decks (deck water tight equipment): Water due to heavy seas shall not enter the enclosures under prescribed conditions*).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Protection against immersion in water: It must not be possible for water to enter the enclosure under stated conditions of pressure and time*).</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Protection against indefinite immersion in water under specified pressure: It must not be possible for water to enter the enclosure*).</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*) For certain types of equipment there must be no ingress of water. Where required this is stated in a supplementary page for the equipment concerned.
### TABLE 9

#### SELECTION OF LUMINAIRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lamp Type</th>
<th>Range</th>
<th>Luminous Flux</th>
<th>Efficacy Lm/W</th>
<th>Life Hours</th>
<th>Colour Rendering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GLS (Incandescent)</td>
<td>25W-1000W</td>
<td>230-18000</td>
<td>9-18</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halogen</td>
<td>300W-1000W</td>
<td>5100-22000</td>
<td>17-22</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFL</td>
<td>9W-36W</td>
<td>600-2900</td>
<td>59-78</td>
<td>8000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>18W-40W</td>
<td>1015-2450</td>
<td>49-77</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>Good to moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ML</td>
<td>160 W</td>
<td>2900</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPMV</td>
<td>80W-400W</td>
<td>3500-22000</td>
<td>44-58</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP SV</td>
<td>70W-1000W</td>
<td>6000-130000</td>
<td>83-119</td>
<td>12000</td>
<td>Fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 15000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPSV</td>
<td>18W-35W</td>
<td>1800-4500</td>
<td>100-129</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal Halide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i) a) HPI-T</td>
<td>250W</td>
<td>17000W</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) HPI-T</td>
<td>400W</td>
<td>31500W</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) HPI-T</td>
<td>1000W</td>
<td>81000W</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d) HPI-T</td>
<td>2000W</td>
<td>189000W</td>
<td>70-90</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii) a) HPI-BU</td>
<td>250W</td>
<td>~17500W</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) HPI-BU</td>
<td>400W</td>
<td>27600W</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>10000</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii) a) MHNTD</td>
<td>70W</td>
<td>5500W</td>
<td>75-80</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) MHNTD</td>
<td>150W</td>
<td>11250W</td>
<td>75-80</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SELECTION OF LUMINAIRE

- **Temp-(K)**
- **"Incandescent - like"** 2500  "Cosy" warm white
- **"Halogen - like"** 3000  "Crisp" warm white
- 4000  Neutral white
- 5000  Cool white
- **"Day light"** 6000

161
### TABLE 10
CAPACITOR SELECTION CHART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Power Factor</th>
<th>Required Power Factor</th>
<th>0.85</th>
<th>0.90</th>
<th>0.95</th>
<th>0.98</th>
<th>Unity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.50</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.112</td>
<td>1.248</td>
<td>1.403</td>
<td>1.529</td>
<td>1.732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.55</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.899</td>
<td>1.035</td>
<td>1.190</td>
<td>1.316</td>
<td>1.519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.60</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.714</td>
<td>0.849</td>
<td>1.005</td>
<td>1.131</td>
<td>1.334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.65</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.549</td>
<td>0.685</td>
<td>0.840</td>
<td>0.966</td>
<td>1.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.70</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.400</td>
<td>0.536</td>
<td>0.691</td>
<td>0.811</td>
<td>1.020</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.75</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.262</td>
<td>0.398</td>
<td>0.553</td>
<td>0.673</td>
<td>0.882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.80</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.130</td>
<td>0.266</td>
<td>0.421</td>
<td>0.541</td>
<td>0.750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.85</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.136</td>
<td>0.291</td>
<td>0.417</td>
<td>0.620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.155</td>
<td>0.281</td>
<td>0.484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.95</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.126</td>
<td>0.329</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required KVAR = KW x Multiplying factor.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S. No.</th>
<th>Industrial Buildings and Processes</th>
<th>Illumination Lux</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Airport Buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Reception areas (desks)</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Customs and immigration halls</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Circulation areas, lounges</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Assembly and Concert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Foyers, auditoria</td>
<td>100 to 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Platforms</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Corridors</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Stairs</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Banks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Counters, typing, accounting book areas</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Public areas</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Cinemas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Foyers</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Auditoria</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Corridors</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Stairs</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Libraries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Shelves (stacks)</td>
<td>70 to 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b) Reading rooms (newspapers and magazines)</td>
<td>150 to 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c) Reading tables</td>
<td>300 to 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d) Book repair and binding</td>
<td>300 to 700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e) Cataloguing, sorting, stock rooms</td>
<td>150 to 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Museums and Art Galleries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a) Museums:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i) General</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ii) Displays</td>
<td>Special lighting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

163
7. Offices
   a) Entrance halls and reception areas 150
   b) Conference rooms, executive offices 300
   c) General offices 300
   d) Business machine operation 450
   e) Drawing offices:
      i) General 300
      ii) Boards and tracing 450
   f) Corridors and lift cars 70
   g) Stairs 100
   h) Lift landings 150
   i) Telephone exchanges:
      i) Manual exchange rooms (on desk) 200
      ii) Main distribution frame room 150

8. Schools and colleges
   a) Assembly halls
      i) General 150
      ii) When used for examinations 300
      iii) Platforms 300
   b) Class and lecture rooms
      i) Desks 300
      ii) Chalk boards 200 to 300
   c) Embroidery and sewing rooms 700
   d) Art rooms 450
   e) Laboratories 300
   f) Libraries:
      i) Shelves, stacks 70 to 150
      ii) Reading tables 300
   g) Manual training
      See appropriate trades
   h) Offices 300
   i) Staff rooms, common rooms 150
   j) Corridors 70
   k) Stairs 100

9. Theatres
   a) Foyers 150
   b) Auditoria 70
   c) Corridors 70
10. **Dental Surgeries**
   a) Waiting rooms 150
   b) Surgeries:
      i) General 300
      ii) Chairs Special Lighting
   c) Laboratories 300

11. **Doctor’s Surgeries**
   a) Waiting rooms, consulting rooms 150
   b) Corridors 70
   c) Stairs 100
   d) Sight testing (acuity) wall charts and near vision types 450

12. **Hospitals**
   a) Reception and waiting rooms 150
   b) Wards:
      i) General 100
      ii) Beds 150
   c) Operating theatres:
      i) General 300
      ii) Tables Special lighting
   d) Laboratories 300
   e) Radiology departments 100
   f) Casualty and outpatient departments 150
   g) Stairs, corridors 100
   h) Dispensaries 300

13. **Hotels**
   a) Entrance halls 150
   b) Reception and accounts 300
   c) Dining rooms (tables) 100
   d) Lounges 150
   e) Bedrooms:
      i) General 100
      ii) Dressing tables, bed heads etc. 200
   f) Writing rooms (Tables) 300
   g) Corridors 70
   h) Stairs 100
   i) Laundries 200
   j) Kitchens *200

165
k) Goods and passenger lifts 70
l) Cloakrooms and toilets *100
m) Bathrooms 7 *100

14. Restaurants
   a) Dining rooms:
      i) Tables 100
      ii) Cash desks 300
   b) Self-carrying counters 300
   c) Kitchens *200
   d) Cloakrooms and toilets *100

15. Shops and stores
   a) General areas +150 to 300
   b) Stock rooms 200

16. Homes
   a) Kitchens 200
   b) Bathrooms ++100
   c) Stairs 100
   d) Workshops 200
   e) Garages 70
   f) Sewing and darning 700
   g) Reading (casual) 150
   h) Homework and sustained reading 300

* Supplementary local lighting should be provided over kitchen equipment and at mirrors.
+ Supplementary local lighting should be used as required for counters and display areas.
++ Supplementary local lighting should be provided at mirrors.
### TABLE – 12

**EXPECTED USEFUL LIFE OF VARIOUS ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENTS/INSTALLATIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Life in years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td><strong>Wiring of Electrical Installation</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Conduit wiring non-coastal area</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Conduit wiring coastal area</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Casing and capping wiring</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>PVC wiring on batten</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.</td>
<td><strong>Fans</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Ceiling fan A.C.</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Exhaust fan A.C.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Table fan A.C.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Pedestal / Air circulator fan</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td><strong>External Electrical Lines</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Temporary overhead lines on wooden poles</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Permanent overhead lines on steel/RCC poles</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Underground cable lines</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td><strong>Poles &amp; Feeder Pillars</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>MS Pole non-coastal area</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>MS Pole coastal area</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Hot dipped galvanized pole non-coastal area</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Hot dipped galvanized pole coastal area</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Feeder pillar in non-coastal area</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Feeder pillar in coastal area</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.</td>
<td><strong>Electrical Fittings</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Bracket fittings</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Fluorescent fitting</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Street light fitting</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td><strong>Sub-station equipment</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Switchgear heavy duty LT/HT</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Transformer 11 KV/ 0.4 KV</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td><strong>Lifts</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Electric Lift</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.</td>
<td><strong>Electrical Motors &amp; Pumps</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Electric Motor single phase</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

167
2. Electric Motor three phase 15
3. Electric Pumps medium (1500 RPM) AC 10
4. Engine Pump small up to 10 H.P. (Diesel) 10
5. Engine Pump big above 10 H.P. (Diesel) 12
6. Diesel Generator up to 50 KW 12
7. Diesel Generator above 50 KW 15

I. Refrigerators, Coolers and Air-Conditioners
1. Refrigerators 8
2. Cold storage plant with air-cooled condensing unit 8
3. Cold storage plant with water cooled condensing unit 12
4. Desert coolers (1500-2000 cfm) evaporative type 5
5. Water coolers 7
6. Room coolers 5
7. Window type/ Split type Air-conditioning unit 7
8. Packaged type air-conditioning unit with water cooled condensers (on single shift basis) 10
9. Packaged type air-conditioning unit with air cooled condensers (on single shift basis) 8
10. DX type central air-conditioning plant with water cooled condensers (on single shift basis) 15
11. Central Chilled water system of air-conditioning plant with water cooled condensers (on single shift basis) 15
12. Evaporative type air-cooling plant up to 25000 cfm (on single shift basis) 15
13. Evaporative type air-cooling plant above 25000 cfm (on single shift basis) 15

J. Mechanical Machinery

a) Asphalt Plant
1. Hot mix Asphalt Plant (up to 10 TPH) 5
2. Hot mix Asphalt plant (10 to 30 TPH) 7
3. Hot mix Asphalt plant (30/45 TPH) 8
4. Tar/Bitumen heater 1000-1500 Lit capacity. 8
5. Cold Asphalt mixer 30 Cft. 5
6. Asphalt power finishers 5

b) Compaction Equipment
1. Hand roller 1/2 ton 20
2. Diesel steel wheel roller 8/10 tons capacity 18
3. Vibratory tandem roller 4 tons 15
4. Sheep foot roller single/double drum 15
c) **Concrete Plants**

1. Concrete mixer 3/5 cft capacity 200 7
2. Concrete mixer 0.28/0.20 and 0.39/0.28 cu.m. Capacity 8
3. Electric vibrator capacity 5 H.P. 5
4. Vibrator engine driven/immersion/screed board 5
5. Type above 2 HP – 5 HP 5

d) **Earth Moving Machinery**

1. Dozer 12
2. Earth Rammer 6
3. Front end loader 75 B.H.P. 15
4. Front end loader 45 B.H.P. 10
5. Motor Grader 68-80 B.H.P. 12
6. Electric driven portable swivel loader 15

e) **Miscellaneous**

1. Air compressor 100-210 5
2. Mobile crane – 1 ton capacity 20
3. Grass mover 1, mid/rear mounted 10
4. Centrifugal pump up to 10 HP 8
5. Trailer mounted centrifugal pump, engine driven above 10 HP – 50 HP 10
6. Spray painting equipment complete 10
7. Welding transformer 5
8. Pneumatic rock drill 3
9. Pneumatic pavement breaker 3
10. Generating set up to 50 KW with trolley 10
11. Insulating oil dehydration plant up to 500 Lit. 15
12. Core cutting machine 5
13. Water tank 910 lit. capacity trolley mounted 8

f) **Transport**

1. Tipper/truck 7
2. Tractor 5 – 40 BHP 7
3. Tractor 60-80 BHP 10
4. Jeep 7
5. Four wheel trailer 7

**Note:**
These are general guidelines. Proposal for replacement will be based on actual hours of operation / conditions of use and inspection by the concerned authority. Based on adverse working condition, it may be necessary to replace installations earlier. Similarly replacement can be postponed if the existing condition is found to be satisfactory based on detailed inspection done. But it is necessary to keep close watch, when useful life is going to be over.
**TABLE – 13**

**LIST OF T&P TO BE HELD BY EACH JUNIOR ENGINEER AS A MAINTENANCE UNIT**

1. Earth Tester
2. Insulation Tester LT/HT
3. Tong Tester
4. Multimeter
5. Lux Meter
6. Vernier Caliper
7. Wire Gauge
8. Hand Blower / Vacuum Cleaner
9. Drill Machine
10. Chase Cutting Machine
11. Crimping tool kit.
12. Self-supporting ladder – 4 ft. 3 Nos.
14. Electrical wiring drawing machine
15. Cable fault locator machine.
16. One set of hydraulic crimping tool kit

**Note:** Item No. 15 & 16 will be procured by Superintending Engineer (E) based on the requirement.
Basic Lighting arrangements
GA DRG FOR FEEDER PILLAR

Note:-

a) The fabrication will be done out of 2 mm thick CRCA sheet with double door and inbuilt locking arrangement.
b) All connections (incoming and outgoing) will be taken out in cable alley with suitable rated solid copper conductor.
c) The feeder pillar will have to be supplied with suitable pedestal (MS angle iron frame of MS channel base for grouting in the RCC and proper gland at the bottom).
d) The feeder pillar will be having one 10 Amp 3 pin socket outlet with 10 amp switch and one brass batten holder fitted in Metering Panel compartment and directly fed from incoming.
e) The depth of the feeder pillar has been considered as 400mm.
f) The Bus Bars made of hard drawn Tinned copper are fitted on insulated DMC supports.
g) Sizes and arrangement are suggestive. Exact size and arrangement will be decided by NTPC approving authority.
h) The feeder pillar should be provided with terminal blocks for incoming & outgoing cables. From MCCB to terminal block wiring will be done with copper conductor / suitable cable. Incoming/outgoing U.G. cable will be terminated in terminal block. This will very much reduce congestion of cables.
i) All dimensions in mm.
NOT TO SCALE

TYPICAL DESIGN OF M.S. FAN CLAMPS

TYPE 1 WHERE FAN CLAMP IS TO BE FIXED DURING LAYING OF R.C.C. SLAB

NOTE:
FAN CLAMP SHALL BE PLACED IN POSITION SUCH THAT ITS PROJECTING ARMS ARE IN THE LINE OF LENGTH OF BEAM

EXPOSED LOOP SHALL BE PAINTED

TYPE 2 WHERE FAN CLAMP IS TO BE FIXED DURING LAYING OF R.C.C. BEAM

CPWD
CIRCULAR BOX TYPE FAN CLAMP

Fig.:—6  
Clause:—3.16(vi)

NOT TO SCALE

SUITABLE 'L' SHAPED BENDS ARE TO BE WELDED AS SHOWN FOR FIXING THE TOP AND BOTTOM COVERS BY MEANS OF SCREWS

All dimensions are in mm.

CPWD
TYPICAL CUBICAL PANEL FOR METER BOARD

LOOSE WIRE BOX

Terminal Blocks for outgoing Phase & neutral

Locking arrangement

Space for Energy Meter

MCCB/MCB

BUS BAR CHAMBER

- All dimensions in mm.
- Individual Meter box will have locking arrangement.
- Loose wire box, Cable Alley and bus bar chamber will have arrangement for sealing.
- Sizes and arrangement are suggestive. Exact size and arrangement will be decided by NIT approving authority.

CPWD
Pre-wired MCB distribution boards
(Single Phase)

Schematic Line Diagram
Pre-Wired Multi-Connection Panel
(Single Phase)
SCHEMATIC FOR POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM
METHOD OF PIPE EARTHING

NOTE:
EXCAVATION AS SHOWN AROUND THE GI PIPE SHALL BE ADOPTED ONLY WHEN SALT & COKE/CHARCOAL IS TO BE USED IN OTHER CASES USE OF ANGER OF MIN. DIA. 15 CM SHALL BE PERMITTED

ALTERNATE LAYER OF CHAR COAL COKE AND SALT

ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN CM (OTHER DIMENSIONS SHOWN)
METHOD OF PLATE EARTHING

GROUND LEVEL

60cm. x 60cm. 6mm. G.I. Plate

60cm. x 60cm. 3mm. copper Plate

ALTERNATE LAYER OF CHARCOAL/COKE OR SALT

EARTH ELECTRODE FOR EARTH CONNECTION IN G.I. PIPE

20mm. G.I. PIPE FOR WATERING

G.I. PIPE FOR PROTECTION

NOTE BOLT, NUT, CHECK NUT AND WASHERS TO BE OF G.I. FOR G.I. PLATE AND OF TINNED BRASS FOR COPPER PLATE

"A"

ALL DIMENSION ARE IN CM. (OTHER DIMENSION SHOWN)

CPWD
METHOD OF PLAN FABRICATION
EARTHING CONCEPT

1, 2, 3, 4 = Protective conductors
1. = Circuit Protective conductors
2. = Main equipotential bonding conductor
3. = Earthing conductor
4. = Supplementary equipotential bonding conductor (where required)

B = Main earthing terminal
M = Exposed conductive part
C = Extraneous conductive part
P = Main metallic water pipe
T = Earth electrodes (TT & IT system)
E = Other means of earthing (TN system)

Fig.: 14
Clause: F-3.2.2

CPWD
TYPICAL EARTHING SCHEMATIC FOR INTERNAL E.I.

LEGEND:
1. Earth electrode
2. Earthing conductor
3. Protection pipe earthing conductor
4. Main earthing terminal or earth bus
5. Earth bus
6. Exaneous protective parts.
7. Protective conductor
8. Protective (loop earthing) conductor
9. Main bonding conductor
10. Supplementary bonding conductor
11. Independent earth connection block

NOTE 1. (8) Should be terminated to (11) by screws.
2. Earth pin of socket outlet and metallic part of fan regulators should be connected to * in switch boxes.
3. Fittings with earthing terminals may be connected to * in metallic boxes.
4. When distribution is by U.G. cable protective conductors should be provided in addition to the cable armouring.
5. All earthing terminal & earth bus shall be marked as (E) for. The main earthing terminal shall be marked as

SAFETY EARTH - DO NOT DISCONNECT

CPWD
Typical Earthing Schematic for Internal E1
1. GENERAL, COMMERCIAL/TECHNICAL

1.1 Scope
1.2 Related documents
1.3 Terminology
1.4 Submission of tenders
1.5 Rates
1.6 Taxes and duties.
1.7 Mobilisation advance
1.8 Completeness of tender
1.9 Works to be arranged by the Deptt.
1.10 Works to be done by the Contractor.
1.11 Storage and custody of materials
1.12 Electric power supply and water supply.
1.13 Tools for handling and erection
1.14 Payment terms
1.15 Co-ordination with other agencies
1.16 Care of buildings
1.17 Structural alterations to buildings.
1.18 Addition to an installation
1.19 Work in occupied buildings.
1.20 Drawings
1.21 Conformity to IE Act, IE Rules, and standards.
1.22 General requirements of components
1.22.1 Quality of materials
1.22.2 Inspections of materials and equipments
1.22.3 Ratings of Components
1.22.4 Conformity of standards
1.22.5 Interchangeability
1.23 Workmanship
1.23.1 Good workmanship
1.23.2 Proper supervision/skilled workmen
1.23.3 Use of quality material
1.23.4 Fabrication in reputed workshop
1.24 Testing
1.25 Commissioning on completion
1.26 Completion Plan and completion certificate.
1.27 Guarantee
2. PLANNING OF ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

2.1 Planning of electrical installation
2.2 Coordination
2.3 Location and requirement of substation
2.3.1 Reasons for setting up of substation.
2.3.2 Ideal location
2.3.3 Space for electric substation.
2.3.4 Coordination with local supply authority
2.3.5 Provision for future growth of load
2.3.6 Space for electrical services
2.3.7 Location of switch room
2.3.8 Distribution of supply and cabling
2.3.9 System of supply
2.3.10 Stand-by systems
2.3.11 Planning for peak-non peak loads in office buildings.
2.4 Quality of electric supply.
2.5 Standby generator set
2.6 Power factor management
2.7 UPS
2.8 Allied services
2.9 Lux Level
2.10 False ceiling coordination
2.11 Functional areas like Auditorium, conference hall, computer rooms, library.
2.12 Areas like Hospitals, Stadia
2.13 Outdoor lighting, high mast lighting, road lighting, security lighting, garden lighting, illuminated fountains.
2.14 Street light poles

3. ELECTRIC POWER DISTRIBUTION AND WIRING

3.1 Introduction
3.2 System of distribution and wiring
3.3 Wiring
3.3.1 Submain & Circuit wiring
3.3.2 Measurement of submain and circuit wiring
3.3.3 Measurement of other wiring work
3.4 Point wiring
3.4.1 Definition
3.4.2 Scope
3.4.3 Measurement
3.4.4 Classification
3.4.4.a Residential building
3.4.4.b Non residential building
3.4.4.c For any other type of building
3.4.5 Point wiring for socket outlet points
3.4.6 Group control point wiring
3.4.7 Twin control light point wiring
3.4.8 Multiple controlled call bell point wiring
3.5 Wiring system
3.6 Run of wiring
3.7 Passing through walls or floors.
3.8 Joints in wiring
3.9 Ratings of outlets
3.10 Capacity of circuits
3.11 Socket outlets
3.12 Cables
3.13 Flexible cable
3.14 Wiring accessories
3.14.a Control switches for point
3.14.b Switch box
3.14.c Switch box cover
3.14.d Ceiling rose
3.14.e Lamp holders
3.14.f Fittings
3.15 Attachment of fittings and accessories
3.16 Fans, regulators and clamps
3.17 Marking of switch boards.
3.18 LT distribution switchgear
3.19 Location of switchboards.
3.20 Guidelines for planning residential areas
3.21 Guidelines for planning office buildings

4. METALLIC CONDUIT WIRING SYSTEM

4.0 Scope
4.1 Application
4.2 Materials
4.2.1 Conduits
4.2.2 Conduit accessories
4.2.3 Outlets
4.3 Installation
4.3.1 Common aspects for recessed and surface conduit work
4.3.1 (i) Conduit joints
4.3.1 (ii) Bends in conduit
4.3.1 (iii) Outlets
4.3.1 (iv) Painting after erection
4.3.2 Additional requirements for surface conduit work
4.3.2 (i) Painting before erection
4.3.2 (ii) Fixing conduit on surface
4.3.2 (iii) Fixing outlet boxes
4.3.3 Additional requirements for recessed conduit work
4.3.3 (i) Making chase
4.3.3 (ii) Fixing conduits in chase
4.3.3 (iii) Fixing conduits in RCC work
4.3.3. (iv) Fixing inspection boxes
4.3.3. (v) Fixing switch boxes and accessories
4.3.3. (vi) Fish wire
4.3.3. (vii) Bunching of cables
4.3.4 Earthing requirements

5. NON METALLIC CONDUIT WIRING SYSTEM

5.0 Scope
5.1 Application
5.1.1 Recessed conduit
5.1.2 Flexible non-metallic conduits
5.1.3 Special precautions
5.2 Material
5.2.1 Conduits
5.2.2 Conduit accessories
5.2.3 Outlets
5.3 Installation
5.3.1 Common aspects for both recessed and surface conduit works.
5.3.1.(i) Erection of conduits
5.3.1.(ii) Conduit joints
5.3.1.(iii) Bends in conduit
5.3.1.(iv) Outlets
5.3.1.(v) Painting
5.3.2 Additional requirements for surface conduit work.
5.3.3 Additional requirements for recessed conduit work
5.3.3.(i) Making chase
5.3.3.(ii) Fixing conduits in chase
5.3.3.(iii) Erection in RCC work
5.3.3.(iv) Fixing inspection boxes
5.3.3.(v) Fixing switch boxes and accessories
5.3.3.(vi) Fish wire
5.3.3.(vii) Bunching of cables
5.3.4 Earthing requirements
6. TRUNKING CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

6.0 Scope
6.1 Application
1.2 Material
1.2.1 Type of material
1.2.2 Shape
1.2.3 Quality
1.2.4 Dimensions
1.2.5 Outlet boxes
1.3 Installation
1.3.1 Attachment to wall and ceiling
1.3.2 Passing through floors or walls
1.3.3 Joints in casing and capping
1.3.4 Colour
1.3.5 Attachment of capping
1.3.6 Installation of cables
1.3.7 Earth continuity

7. M.V. PANEL, D.B., RISING MAINS, BUS TRUNKING AND OVERHEAD BUS BAR SYSTEM.

7.0 Scope
7.1 Specification of LT cubicle panel
7.1.(i) International Protection
7.1.(ii) Space and arrangement
7.1.(iii) Material and size
7.1.(iv) Arrangement for incoming/outgoing cable termination
7.1.(v) Bus bars/supports/clearances
7.1.(vi) Earthing
7.1.(vii) Commissioning
7.1.2 Specification of Prewired DB
7.2 Rising mains
7.2.(i) Application
7.2.(ii) Enclosure
7.2.(iii) Busbars
7.2.(iii) a. Rating
7.2.(iii) b. Current density
7.2.(iii) c. Cross section of bus bars
7.2.(iii) d. Insulation
7.2.(iii) e. Bus bar supports
7.2.(iii) f. Bus bar clearances
7.2.(iv) Expansion joint
7.2(v) Thrust Pads
7.2(vi) Mounting
7.2(vii) Construction features
7.2(viii) Installation of rising mains
7.2(ix) Commissioning
7.3 Bus trunking
7.3.1 Application
7.3.2 Materials
7.3.2.1 Enclosure
7.3.2.2 Bus bars and supports
7.3.3 Construction
7.3.3.1 Enclosure
7.3.3.2 Expansion joint/flexible termination
7.3.4 Installation
7.4 Overhead busbar system
7.4.1 Application
7.4.2 Materials
7.4.2.1 Enclosure
7.4.2.2 Bus bars and supports
7.4.3 Construction
7.4.4 Plug-in boxes
7.4.5 Installation
7.4.6 Earthing
7.4.7 Danger notice board
7.4.8 Precommissioning checks

8. EARTHING

8.0 Scope
8.1 Application
8.2 Types of Electrodes and material
8.2.1 Earth Electrodes
8.2.1.1 Types
8.2.1.2 Electrode materials and dimensions
8.2.2 Earthing conductor & sizes
8.2.3 Earth continuity / loop earthing conductor and sizes.
8.3 Location for earth electrodes
8.4 Installation
8.4.1 Electrodes
8.4.1.1 Various types of electrodes
8.4.1.2 Artificial treatment of soil
8.4.1.3 Watering arrangement
8.4.2 Earthing conductor (Main earthing lead)
9. PROTECTION OF BUILDING AGAINST LIGHTNING

9.0 Scope
9.1 Application
9.2 Principal Components
9.3 Materials
9.3.1 Protection against corrosion.
9.3.2 Restriction about use of aluminium
9.3.3 Use of GI/Copper/Copper clad steel as air termination
9.3.4 Shape and size of conductors
9.4 Layout
9.4.1 General
9.4.2 Air terminations
9.4.3 Down conductors
9.5 Installation
9.5.1 General
9.5.2 Air terminations
9.5.3 Down conductors
9.5.4 Joints and bonds
9.5.4.1 Joints
9.5.4.2 Bonds
9.5.5 Test joints
9.5.6 Earth termination network.

10. SAFETY PROCEDURE

10.1 Indian Electricity Rules compliance
10.2 Safety procedures and practices
10.3 (a) Schematic diagram
10.3 (b) Keep premises clean
10.3 (c) Electrical shafts
10.3 (d) Protected premises
10.3 (e) Frontage of area
10.4 Inflammable materials
10.5 Rubber or insulating mats
10.6 Protective and safety equipments
10.7 Caution boards
10.8 First aid boxes
10.9 Periodical examination of the first aid facilities
10.10 Charts
10.11 Names; address and telephone numbers
10.12 Training of supervisory staff
10.13 New recruits
10.14 Refresher course
10.15 Preventive maintenance
10.16 Electrical wiring and control switches
10.17 Reports and registers
10.18 Live installation
10.19 Handling of live LT switch board
10.20 Insulated tools
10.21 Marking of switch board
10.22 Precautions
10.23 Energising an installation
10.24 Electrical accidents and shock
10.25 Artificial respiration
10.26 Instructions
10.27 Imparting of instructions

11. FIRE HAZARDS

11.1 Main pre-requisite
11.2 Instructions to be followed

12. ENERGY CONSERVATION

13. MAINTENANCE

13.1 Organised maintenance
13.2 Importance of maintenance
13.3 General guidelines

14. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

14.1 Cleanliness
14.2 Schematic diagram
14.3 Loose wiring
14.4 Overloading
14.5 Preventive maintenance of switch board & DBs
14.6 Multistorey building
14.7 Preventive Maintenance schedule
14.8 Manning/supervision
14.9 Maintenance of log records
14.10 Safety measures
14.11 Annual inspection
14.12 Replacement of outlived equipment
14.13 Survey report
14.14 Display of telephone numbers
14.15 Employment of skilled personnel
14.16 Repair
14.17 Annual painting and checking
14.18 Periodicity of items of work

15. PAINTING

15.0 Scope
15.1 Painting work in general
15.1.1 Paints
15.1.2 Preparation of the surface
15.1.3 Application
15.1.4 Precautions
15.1.5 Repainting
15.2 Painting of conduits and accessories
15.3 Repainting of ceiling fan by spray painting

16. TESTING OF INSTALLATION

16.0 Scope
16.1 General
16.1.1 Tests
2.1.2 Witnessing of tests
2.1.3 Test instruments
2.2 Insulation resistance
16.2.1 Method of testing
16.2.2 Measurement of insulation resistance
16.2.3 Limitation of insulation resistance
16.2.4 Minimum acceptable insulation resistance for whole installation.
16.2.5 Insulation resistance to earth
16.2.6 Terminology regarding outlet
16.2.7 Insulation resistance for control rheostats and power appliances
16.3 Polarity test of switch
16.4 Testing of earth continuity path
16.5 Measurement of earth electrode resistance.
16.6 Test certificate
SPACE FOR ELECTRICAL AND
MECHANICAL SERVICES IN BUILDINGS

COMPANION VOLUME OF GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR
ELECTRICAL WORKS
PART I - INTERNAL
2005

PUBLISHED UNDER THE AUTHORITY OF
DIRECTOR GENERAL OF WORKS, CPWD, NEW DELHI
FOREWORD

1. It is important to provide proper space for various E&M services at preliminary stage itself in coordination with the architect. However, it is seen in many cases, space provided for various E&M services are inadequate and in few cases they are in excess. Sometimes, some services have been left out. Based on feedback received from a number of projects, a uniform standard has been prepared.

2. The enclosed norms are intended only to serve as guidelines, and should not come in the way of modifications/improvements or different approach as required for specific applications as per the judgement of planning engineers.

3. Suggestions/comments will be gratefully received.

4. I appreciate the efforts put in by Shri J. K. Choudhury, Chief Engineer (E) for preparation of this Booklet.

5. This has been approved by 38th Specification Committee held on 9th/10th October, 2002 vide agenda Item 30.0.5.

N. NAGARAJAN
CHIEF ENGINEER (E) DR
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Annexure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Electric Sub-Station cum Fire Pump House</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Electric Sub-Station</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Electric Sub-Station cum AC Plant</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>U.G Wet Riser Pump Room</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Wet Riser cum Water Supply Pump Room</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Fire Fighting and Domestic Water Storage Tank</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII-a</td>
<td>Dimensions of Passenger Lifts</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII-b</td>
<td>Dimensions of Goods Lifts</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII-c</td>
<td>Dimensions of Hospital Lifts</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII-d</td>
<td>Dimensions of Services Lifts</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Electric / Wet Riser Shafts</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>Telephone / Fire Alarm Shafts</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>Rolling Shutter</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI</td>
<td>Wet Riser Shaft Door Details</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII</td>
<td>Electric / Telephone Shaft Door Details</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>Window / Ventilator Design</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>Structural Details for AC Plants</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV</td>
<td>Water Requirement for Fire Protection</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>12 minimum fire safety measures as per National Building Code</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SPACE FOR ELECTRICAL AND MECHANICAL SERVICES IN BUILDINGS

1. INTRODUCTION

E&M services generally provided in a building:
(a) Electric substation, power distribution system.
(b) Generating sets.
(c) Lifts.
(d) AC plant including central plant, package plant, split/window AC units.
(e) Ventilation system.
(f) U.P.S / Voltage stabilizer.
(g) Water supply pumps.
(h) Wet riser system for fire protection.
(i) Fire detection, alarm, PA system for fire protection.
(j) Communication system.
(k) Computer cabling and allied works.
(l) Building security system including CCTV, access control, burglar alarm system.
(m) Building automation system.
(n) External lighting, road lighting, compound lighting, garden lighting, area lighting, high mast lighting and other specialised lighting.
(o) Auditorium lighting, acoustics, stage lighting and sound system.
(p) Swimming pool equipments etc.

All these services require close coordination between civil, architectural and electrical wings right from conceptual stage. Unless proper space is provided for these services, they can’t be provided at construction stage without adversely affecting the aesthetics of the building and functional efficiency of the services. Many services can’t be provided at all in absence of proper planning of space for various E&M services.

2. ELECTRICAL SUB-STATION

(a) Space for:
   - HT panel (both supply and CPWD).
   - Transformers.
   - LT panel.
   - Essential LT panel.
Power factor correction panel.
Generating sets.

P.O.L. Store / other store.
Supervisor room, toilet, workers rest room.
HT voltage correctors.
Voltage stabilizers.
UPS system including battery room.
Other equipments as required.

(b) Ventilation.
(c) Approach road around Sub-Station.
(d) Extract of 1.4.3.2 and 1.4.3.3 of CPWD Electrical Specification Part IV:

1.4.3.2: Area for Sub-Station:
The minimum sub-station and transformer room area required for different capacities are tabulated for general guidance. Actual area will however depend upon the particular layout and site constraints.

The clear height required for Sub-station equipments shall be a minimum of 3.6m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacity (kVA)</th>
<th>Area (sqm)</th>
<th>Clear Height (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2*500</td>
<td>36.00</td>
<td>130.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3*500</td>
<td>54.00</td>
<td>172.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2*800</td>
<td>39.00</td>
<td>135.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3*800</td>
<td>58.00</td>
<td>181.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2*1000</td>
<td>39.00</td>
<td>149.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3*1000</td>
<td>58.00</td>
<td>197.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1

1.4.3.3: Area for Generating Sets:
Additional area that is required for one generator is given below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Capacity (kW)</th>
<th>Area (sqm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>56.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>56.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>65.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>72.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>248</td>
<td>100.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2
The clear height required for the generating set room shall be a minimum of 3.6m up to 100kW capacity and 4.57m for higher capacities.

(e) Location of Sub-station:
   i. Avoid basement due to likely flooding during rains (there is hardly any basement sub-station/AC plant, which is not affected by substantial damage due to flooding).
   ii. No parking in front of transformer and other requirements.
   iii. Easy approach to equipments.
   iv. Closer to the electrical load center and preferably in the ground floor.

(f) Future Expansion:
   The substation design should take into account reasonable augmentation of equipments in future.

(g) Security Precaution:
   Substation is the heart of electrical system. Wherever required, security measures like boundary wall and lockable gate may be provided so that un-authorized entry to substation can be prohibited.

ANNEXURE I, II & III FOR SUB-STATION MAY BE SEEN

3. WET RISER & WATER SUPPLY PUMP HOUSE
   Preferable to have underground pump house by the side of U.G. water reservoir to ensure flooded suction.
   Water supply pump sets to be combined. Provide suitable ramp approach 1.5 m wide with suitable slope for easy access of heavy equipments and inspection personnel.
   Roof slab may be 500 mm above ground level with ventilators. Provided suitable water proofing to prevent seepage of water into pump house.
   Preventive measures to be taken so that during heavy rains, rainwater does not get into pump house.

Extract Of Para 1.3.3. Of CPWD Specifications Part V: Wet Riser System for Fire Fighting:

Location and Requirements

(a) Under Ground Static Storage Tank And Pump House:
   Following aspects shall be considered in deciding the locations of the underground static water storage tank and the wet riser pump house:
   i. Easy accessibility for fire fighting operations.
   ii. Proximity of fire pump house to the static tank.
   iii. Ease in bringing and removing equipments.
   iv. Pump house not being prone to flooding by rainwater subsoil water.
Protection of the pump house from any falling masonry and the like occasioned by fire.

Adequate ventilation for engine aspiration and to limit the temperature rise in pump house on continuous operation.

Aesthetics.

To protect the pump house, it should preferably be located at least 6 m away from the building. Where this is not possible, this shall be enclosed with suitable masonry structure as a part of the building to prevent spread of fire into the pump room and provide safe operation.

The fire pump house should be located such that the suction for the pump is flooded. Where this is not practical, the pump house may be constructed with negative suction for pump, with suitable automatic priming arrangement. The size of the fire pump house should be 5.5 m x 8 m x 3.5 m, where engine driven fire pump, electric motor driven fire pump and pressurization pump are installed.

The capacity and design of the static tank shall be in accordance with the provisions of National Building Code Part IV - Fire Protection and the local Bylaws as applicable. (See Appendix - II).

**ANNEXURE IV, V & VI FOR PUMP HOUSE & TANK MAY BE SEEN**

(b) External Piping And Hydrants:

External hydrants shall be located within 2m to 15m from the building to be protected such that they are accessible and may not be damaged by vehicles. A spacing of about 45m between hydrants is generally adopted.

(c) Internal Riser and Hydrants:

Normally one wet riser is required for every 1000 sqm of covered area. However, the maximum distance that can be served shall be 30 m from the riser.

4. LIFTS

Check Sizes As Per B.I.S.

(a) Capacity & number of lifts.

(A minimum capacity of 13 passenger lift for office bldg. and 8 passenger lift for residential building).

Ensure provision of goods lift.

(b) Lift well size.

(c) Pit depth.

(d) Machine room size.

(e) Over head.
(f) The floor of lift machine room shall be designed for a uniform load of 1000 kg/sq.m.

(g) Lift pit to be waterproofed.

(h) No structural member intrusions into lift well, like column, beam projections which compromise lift well dimensions.

ANNEXURE VII-a, VII-b, VII-c, VII-d MAY BE SEEN

5. FIRE CONTROL ROOM / TELEPHONE ROOM

(a) Telephone room: 4m x 3m.

(b) Fire control room: 4m x 3m preferable location near entrance lobby.

Note: Fire control room is a statutory requirement as per national building code.

ANNEXURE IX MAY BE SEEN

6. AIR CONDITIONING

(a) Air-conditioning is maintenance of specified inside conditions: temperature, relative humidity, air changes and air quality.

Air-conditioning also includes winter heating and clean air system.

(b) Depending upon specific requirements, following systems of air-conditioning are followed:

i. Window type AC Units.

ii. Split type AC Units.

iii. Package type AC Units.

iv. Central AC System.

(c) Their brief applications are as below:

i. Window typeUnits: Suitable for individual isolated rooms. Consumes very high amount of power. No relative humidity control. Very little control over air quality. Suitable for area upto 100 Sqm.

ii. Split Units: They are same as window type AC units, except that the compressor units are located away from evaporator (fan) units. The noise of compressor is kept away. Energy wasteful.

iii. Package type: They are mini and compact central plants available up to 10-Ton capacity. This system is suitable for areas between 100 to 1000 sqm.

iv. Central AC Plants: They are suitable for large areas. Excellent control over temperature,
humidity, clean air, air changes, noise control, uniform distribution and have energy efficiency. A properly
designed central AC system will be reliable, effective and efficient. Hence for air-conditioning
areas in excess of 1000 sqm, central AC plant is preferred.

(d) Comparison of Systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Central AC Plant</th>
<th>Package Plant</th>
<th>Split/Window AC Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 yrs</td>
<td>10 yrs</td>
<td>7 yrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life span</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating Cost</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance Cost</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3

The central plants are designed with suitable standby systems to give reliable service. Properly
designed buildings also will reduce ingress of heat, hence the heat load also is reduced by as much
as 25%, in case of central plant.

For example, a properly designed building with 200 ton AC load, working 8hr/day, 250 days/year
will consume approximately 4 Lac units of electricity per year which comes to Rs.16 Lac/year. If
the same building is air-conditioned with window type AC units/split type units, without proper
insulation of the building, the energy cost is likely to be 60% more.

(e) The space & structural requirements for air-conditioning works vary considerably with the systems
adopted. It is therefore advisable to study individual cases and decide accordingly in consultation
with the manufactures, if necessary. However, a general guideline is given in annexe XIV for the
purpose of preliminary design/drawing.

i. Space for:

A/C plant room, cooling tower, make up water tank, air handling units, shaft for chilled
water lines.

ii. Shaft, space, false ceiling for ducts, air tightness of doors & windows in air-conditioned
areas & AHU rooms.

iii. Clear height of 3.4 m in corridor/air conditioned space, as the case may be to accommodate
supply air duct and return air path.

iv. Thermal insulation of ceiling and walls of air-conditioned area/AHU rooms wherever
necessary.

v. Acoustic insulation for AHU rooms.

vi. Co-ordination of false ceiling work.

vii. Availability of water supply for cooling towers.
viii. Ventilation of AC plant room.
ix. Approach road around plant room.

x. Drainage of AHU room, fresh air opening in AHU room.

xi. Opening for WT AC units. (Annexure XIII).

xii. Space for split AC condensing units and route and entry for inter-connection of indoor &
outdoor units.

7. SHAFTS

(a) Shaft Details:

i. Electrical rising main shaft: 2.2 x 0.8 m for accommodation normal & essential supply rising
mains.

ii. Wet riser shaft: 1.2 m * 0.8 m.

iii. Telephone shaft: 0.6 m * 0.3 m.

iv. Fire alarm shaft: 0.6 m * 0.3 m.

v. Computer cabling shaft: 0.6 m * 0.3 m.


PLEASE SEE ANNEXURE VIII & IX

(b) Door for Shafts:

Door for Wet riser shaft may be provided as per Annexure XI. Provide steel doorframe & steel doors
with locking arrangement for other shafts. Doors to open towards corridor.


PLEASE SEE ANNEXURE XI & ANNEXURE XII

Note: No wooden doors shall be used since they pose fire risk.

(c) Location Of Shafts:

i. Fire Alarm Shaft: It shall be located in the lift lobby/common area and preferably can start
from fire control room.

ii. Telephone Shaft: Preferable to start from telephone room.

iii. Shaft shall be in common area and, not inside any room, so that they are accessible to
service personnel even after office hours.

iv. Away from water/drainage shafts. Not to be exposed to rains etc.

8. CABLE ENTRY PIPES

Provide For:

(a) Cable entry into substation.

(b) Substation to rising main shafts.
(c) Cable entry into telephone room.
(d) Wet riser pump to wet riser shafts.

9. S.D.Bs
Shall be recessed in walls nearest to load and nitches for the same are not required.

10. FALSE CEILING IN CORRIDOR
When services like telephone/computer/electrical cables have to be taken in the corridor, it is better to provide false ceiling, so that the service cables are properly covered and don't present a shabby look. Also it helps in laying additional cables in later years.

11. FALSE CEILING IN ROOMS
Light fittings, AC diffusers, fire detectors, P.A speakers will be fixed on false ceiling. Therefore it is necessary to locate all these fixtures to give a symmetrical and aesthetic look. False ceiling materials should be of fire resistance type.

12. CHECK LIST
(a) Electrical substation.
(b) Wet riser pump house.
   Water supply pump house.
(c) Lift:
   i. Number.
   ii. Capacity.
   iii. Shaft dimensions.
   iv. M/c. Room dimensions.
   v. Pit depth.
   vi. Overhead.
   vii. No intrusion of structural members into lift shaft/pitch etc.
   viii. Water proofing of lift pit.
(d) Fire control room and telephone room.
(e) Shafts:
   i. Electrical rising main shaft.
   ii. Wet riser shaft.
   iii. Telephone shaft.
   iv. Fire alarm shaft.
   v. Computer cabling.
(f) Doors for shafts.

(g) Location of shafts.

(h) Service-entry pipes.

(i) Central air-conditioning:
   i. AC plant room.
   ii. Cooling tower location.
   iii. AHU room.
   iv. AHU room drainage, fresh air opening.
   v. Chiller pipes shaft, chiller pipe entry into building.
   vi. False ceiling co-ordination.
   vii. Ceiling height to accommodate ducting.
   viii. Water requirement.
   ix. Routes of piping/cable.
   x. Thermal/acoustic insulation.
   xi. Airtightness of windows/doors. It is proper to provide double glazed windowpanes for insulation.

(j) Split AC Units:
   i. Location of condensing units.
   ii. Interconnection of condensing and indoor units finalisation of route.

(k) Window Type AC Units: Window frames compatible with opening for window type AC units.

(l) Corridor false ceiling to cover service cables.

(m) False ceiling to symmetrically provide for AC diffuser, fire detectors, light fittings and PA speakers. False ceiling material should be fire resistant.

(n) Water supply coordination: Drinking water, toilet water, horticulture, fire fighting, air-conditioning, assessment of water requirements, location of tanks, O.H tanks and pumping arrangements.

(o) Coordination of various service pipe/cable routes: Coordination of water supply, storm water, drain water, sewerage, electricity, telephone, computer, wet riser pipes, air-conditioning cables/pipes fixing their routes, so that the service/cable pipes are coordinated and various executing agencies don’t clash over routes.
NOTE
1. Floor to ceiling height - 4.5m.
2. Floor level - 30cm above ground level.
4. Partition walls - 30cm thick brick.
5. Heavy-duty steel shutter with side railing up to substation roof for roof drainage maintenance.
6. Underground water tank as near as possible to pump room.
7. Rolling shutter 2.5m wide - 3m height as per Annexure X and with ventilation grills.
8. All doors of steel for fire protection.
   d1 - 1m wide - 2m height
   d2 - 75m wide - 1.8m height
10. V - ventilator. Size 75cm wide - 50cm height.
    made of steel frame with heavy wire mesh. 50cm below ceiling.
    E.F.P. - Electrical fire pump.
    P.P. - Jockey pump.
    P1, P2, P3 - Water supply pumps.
12. Cable entry pipes - Executive Eng. Will give location and details.
14. Protection boundary wall with gate - if substation is a protected premises, suitable boundary walls with gates to be provided.
15. Store shelves - .75m deep, RCC, 1m, 2m, 3m above ground level.

NOTE
1. Transformer/HT Panel shall be 'Dry' type when substation is housed with main building. (It is not a separate building away from main building).
2. Room with wall enclosure.
3. In case of 'Dry' transformer is not essential
NOTE
1. Rolling shutter 2.5m wide - 3m height as per Annexure X and with ventilation grills.
2. All doors of steel for fire protection
   d1 - 1.22m wide - 2.1m height double leaf
   d2 - 0.75m wide - 1.8m height
3. W - window - normal size with grill.
4. V - ventilator. Size - 0.75m wide - 0.50m height made of steel frame with heavy wire mesh, 50cm below ceiling.
5. No toilet is required where sub-station is located in the main building itself.
6. Store shelves - 0.75m deep, RCC, 1m, 2m, 3m above ground level.

NOTE
1. Transformer/HT Panel shall be 'Dry' type when substation is housed with main building. (It is not a separate building away from main building). Room with wall enclosure.
2. In case of 'Dry' transformer is not essential

ELECTRICAL SUB-STATION BUILDING

ANNEXURE II
TYPICAL LAYOUT OF D.G SETS, SUB STATION EQUIPMENT AND A.C. PLANT ROOM
2 X 1000 KVA TRANSFORMER
2 X 500 KVA D.G SET
300TR X 3 A.C PLANT

NOTE
1. Floor to ceiling height - 4.5m.
3. Partition walls - 30cm thick brick.
4. Heavy-duty steel ladder with side railing upto substation roof for roof drainage maintenance.
5. 1m wide chaaja projection all around.
6. Rolling shutter 2.5m wide x 3m height as per Annexure-X and with ventilation grills.
7. All doors of steel for fire protection.
8. d1 = 1m wide x 2m height
    d2 = 7.5m wide x 1.8m height
8. W - window - normal size with grill.
9. V - ventilator. Size- 75cm wide x 50cm height made of steel frame with heavy wire mesh. 50cm below ceiling.
    C.W.P. - Condenser water pump.
    A.M.F. - Automatic main failure panel.
11. Cable entry pipes - Executive Eng. Will give location and details.
13. Protection boundary wall with gate - if substation is a protected premise, suitable boundary walls with gates to be provided.
14. Store shelves - 7.5m deep, RCC, 1m, 2m, 3m above ground level.

ANNEXURE III

NOTE
1. Decide cooling tower location.
2. Transformer/HT Panel shall be 'Dry' type when substation is housed with main building. (It is not a separate building away from main building). Room with wall enclosure.
NOTE
ROOF EXTRACTOR SHALL BE CONNECTED TO FIRE PUMP CONTROL FOR AUTOMATIC OPERATION WHEN THE FIRE PUMP STARTS

UNDER GROUND WET RISER PUMP ROOM FOR POSITIVE SUCTION

ANNEXURE IV
PUMP ROOM FOR WET RISER CUM WATER SUPPLY

NOTE
D-door 1220*2000mm with double leaf.
W-window suitable size.
* UG sump and pump room should be as near as possible.
* Priming pump should be submersible type.
3A WITH NEGATIVE SUCTION

3B WITH POSITIVE SUCTION

TYPICAL ARRANGEMENT FOR PROVIDING COMBINED FIRE FIGHTING AND DOMESTIC WATER STORAGE TANK

PART IV FIRE PROTECTION NATIONAL BUILDING CODE

ANNEXURE VI

15
RECOMMENDED DIMENSIONS OF PASSENGER LIFTS

All Dimensions in millimetres

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOAD</th>
<th>CAB INSIDE</th>
<th>LIFT WELL</th>
<th>ENTRANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persons Kg.</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>544</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>680</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>1350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>816</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1088</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>1300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>1360</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANNEXURE VII-a

Recommended dimension for Pit, Overhead and Machine Room for Passenger Lifts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPEED IN M/S</th>
<th>Upto .70</th>
<th>&gt;.7&lt;1.5</th>
<th>&gt;1&lt;1.5</th>
<th>&gt;1.5&lt;1.75</th>
<th>&gt;1.75&lt;2</th>
<th>&gt;2&lt;2.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIT DEPTH</td>
<td>1350</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>2150</td>
<td>2200</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVERHEAD</td>
<td>4250</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>4800</td>
<td>5200</td>
<td>5400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MACHINE ROOM DEPTH</td>
<td>D+2000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MACHINE ROOM WIDTH</td>
<td>C+1000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C+1300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All Dimensions in millimetres

Note
1. The total headroom has been calculated on the basis of car height of 2.3m.
2. In the case of manually operated doors, clear entrance will be reduced by the amount of projection of the landing door.
3. All dimensions given above for lifts having centre opening power operated doors with counterweight at rear, are recommended dimensions primarily for architects and building planners. Any variations mutually agreed between manufacturer and purchaser are permitted. However, variation in:
   i) Cab inside dimension shall be within the maximum area limits specified in 5 of IS14665 (Part 3/Sec 1).
   ii) Entrance width on higher side is permitted.
   iii) Entrance width on lower side is permitted up to 100mm subject to minimum of 700mm.
4. Dimensions of pit depth and overhead may differ in practice as per individual manufacturer design depending upon load, speed and drive. However, the pit depth and overhead shall be such as to conform to the requirements of bottom clearance and top clearance of IS14665 (Part 2/Sec 1).
RECOMMENDED DIMENSIONS OF GOODS LIFTS
(For Speeds upto 1.5m/s)

LOAD | CAR INSIDE | LIFT WELL | ENTRANCE
-----|------------|-----------|-----------
Kg  | A          | B         | C         | D        | E
---|-------------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------
500 | 1100        | 1200      | 1900      | 1500     | 1100     
1000| 1400        | 1800      | 2300      | 2100     | 1400     
1500| 1700        | 2000      | 2600      | 2300     | 1700     
2000| 1700        | 2500      | 2600      | 2800     | 1700     
2500| 2000        | 2500      | 2900      | 2800     | 2000     
3000| 2000        | 3000      | 2900      | 3300     | 2000     
4000| 2000        | 3000      | 3400      | 3300     | 2500     
5000| 2500        | 3600      | 3400      | 3900     | 2500     

All Dimensions in millimetres

ANNEXURE VII-b

ELEVATION

Note
1. The width of the machine room shall be equal to the lift well width 'C' subject to minimum of 2500mm.
2. The total headroom has been calculated on the basis of car height of 2.2m.
3. Clear entrance width 'E' is based on vertical lifting car door and vertical bi-parting landing doors. For collapsible mid-bar doors the clear entrance width will be reduced by 200mm (maximum 1800mm).
4. All dimensions given above are recommended dimensions primarily for architects and building planners. Any variations mutually agreed between manufacturers and purchaser are permitted. However, variation in car inside dimensions shall be within the maximum area limits specified in IS 14665 (Part 3/Sec 1).
5. Dimensions of pit depth and overhead may differ in practice as per individual manufacturer design depending upon load, speed and drive. However, the pit depth and overhead shall be such as to conform to the requirements of bottom clearance and top clearance of IS 14665 (Part 2/Sec 1).
RECOMMENDED DIMENSIONS OF HOSPITAL LIFTS
(For Speeds upto 1.5m/s)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOAD PERSONS</th>
<th>Kg.</th>
<th>CAR INSIDE</th>
<th>LIFT WELL</th>
<th>ENTRANCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>1020</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>1360</td>
<td>1300</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>2200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>1768</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>2400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All Dimensions in millimetres

Note
1. The total headroom has been calculated on the basis of car height of 2.2m.
2. In the case of manually operated doors, clear entrance will be reduced by the amount of projection of the landing doors.
3. Although 15 persons capacity lift is not a standard one, this is included to cover lifts of smaller capacity which can be used in hospitals.
4. All dimensions given above are recommended dimensions primarily for architects and building planners. Any variations mutually agreed between manufacturer and purchaser are permitted. However, variation in car inside dimensions shall be within the maximum area limits specified in IS:14665 (Part 3/Sec 1).
5. Dimensions of pit depth and overhead may differ in practice as per individual manufacturer design depending upon load, speed and drive. However, the pit depth and overhead shall be such as to conform to the requirements of bottom clearance and top clearance of IS 14665 (Part 2/Sec 1).

ANNEXURE VII-c
RECOMMENDED DIMENSIONS OF SERVICE LIFTS
(For speeds upto 0.5 m/s)

LOAD  CAR INSIDE  LIFT WELL  ENTRANCE
Kg.  A   B   C   H   D   E
700  700  700  800  1200  900  700
800  800  800  900  1300  1000  800
900  900  900  1000  1400  1100  900
1000 1000 1000 1000  1500  1200 1000

All Dimensions in millimetres

Note
Entrance width 'E' is based on assumption of provision of vertical biparting doors
(no car door is normally provided).
ELECTRICAL RISING MAIN SHAFT

WET RISER SHAFT
ONE FOR 1000sq.mtrs FLOOR AREA

ANNEXURE VIII
TELEPHONE & FIRE CONTROL ROOM

**FIRE ALARM SHAFT DETAILS**

**TELEPHONE SHAFT DETAILS**

50mm WIDE CUTS IN SLAB

**FIRE CONTROL ROOM**

**TELEPHONE ROOM**

Door Window

Door Window

FIRE ALARM SHAFT

TELEPHONE SHAFT

**ANNEXURE IX**
ROLLING SHUTTER FOR SUB-STATION

ANNEXURE X
WET RISER SHAFT DOOR DETAILS

ANNEXURE XI
ELECTRICAL SHAFT DOOR DETAILS

VENTILATION LOUVER WITH JALI INSIDE

LOCKING ARRANGEMENT

FOLDABLE DOOR (STEEL)

FOLDABLE DOOR HINGES (DOOR OPENS OUTSIDE)

TELEPHONE / FIRE ALARM SHAFT DOOR DETAILS

ANNEXURE XII
Window design compatible with installation of window AC unit

G.I./Angle iron frame

Wire mesh for ventilation

Ventilator design
### ANNEXURE XIV

**STRUCTURAL DETAILS FOR AIR-CONDITIONING PLANTS IN OFFICE BUILDINGS**

(For Preliminary Drawing/Design Only)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basement</td>
<td>90 Cu Meter/ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Floor</td>
<td>75 Cu Meter/ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate Floors</td>
<td>70 Cu Meter/ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top Floor</td>
<td>60 Cu Meter/ton.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>Size of central plant room including weather maker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10sqm.+0.8sqm. per ton. (Clear height not less than 3.75m below soffit of beam.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ii</td>
<td>Size of central plant room excluding weather maker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5sqm.+0.5sqm. per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii</td>
<td>Size of weather maker room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5sqm.+0.3sqm. per ton. (Clear height not less than 3m below soffit of beam)(above 150tons: 0.5sqm. per ton)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv</td>
<td>Fresh air opening in weather maker room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.03sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>(a) Main supply and return duct (Taken together)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.10sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Supply grills (height 20cm to 25cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.10sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Return grills (height 20cm to 25cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.12sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi</td>
<td>(a) Cooling tower: natural draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.40sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Cooling tower: induced draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.15sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vii</td>
<td>Cooling pond(depth 1.5m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0sqm.per ton.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viii</td>
<td>Water consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20litre per ton per hour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ix</td>
<td>Make up water tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12hrs./8hrs. storage capacity for 24hrs./12hrs. operation respectively. Bottom level shall be 2m above the cooling tower sump.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Size of the opening in wall

80cm wide * 50cm high (see annexure XIII)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plant room</th>
<th>20sqm. +0.6sqm. for every 100cu.m. of space to be cooled.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>Fresh air shaft</td>
<td>0.25sqm. for 100cu.m. of space to be cooled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>Duct (masonry)</td>
<td>0.05sqm. for 100cu.m. of space to be cooled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>Duct (Metal)</td>
<td>0.10sqm. for 100cu.m. of space to be cooled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Cooling tower

1. Plant room (central) 3000kg/sqm.
2. Plant room for package type unit (excluding pump sets & weather maker room) 12000kg/sqm.
3. Pump room & weather maker room 1200kg/sqm.
4. Cooling tower
   - (a) Natural draft 300kg/ton
   - (b) Masonry shell induced draft cooling tower (usually above 100 ton) 400kg/ton
   - (c) Wooden package wooden shell/FRP type induced type cooling tower (usually above 100 tons) 100kg/ton
Water requirement for fire protection with wet Riser / down corner system
As per N.B code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height Range</th>
<th>U.G water storage tank static</th>
<th>Terrace tank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Above 15m upto 30m</td>
<td>50,000lts</td>
<td>10,000lts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 30m upto 45m</td>
<td>1,00,000lts</td>
<td>20,000lts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 45m</td>
<td>2,00,000lts</td>
<td>40,000lts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height Range</th>
<th>U.G water storage tank static</th>
<th>Terrace tank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Above 15m upto 30m</td>
<td>1,00,000lts</td>
<td>20,000lts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(50,000lts if covered area in G.F is less than 300sq.m)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 30m upto 45m</td>
<td>2,00,000lts</td>
<td>20,000lts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above 45m</td>
<td>2,50,000lts</td>
<td>50,000lts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 5**
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td><strong>Means of access.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Underground/overhead water static tanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Automatic Sprinklers system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>First-aid Hose Reels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Fire extinguishers of ISI certification marks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Compartmentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Automatic fire detection and alarm system/manually operated electrical fire alarm system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Public address system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Illuminated exit way marking signs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Alternate source of electric supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Fire lift with fireman switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Wet rise/down corner system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As approved by Specification Committee in the 41st Meeting held on 25.7.05, the following amendments are hereby ordered in the "General Specification for Electrical Works (Part-I – Internal) 2005"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No.</th>
<th>Existing Provision</th>
<th>Amended Provisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Clause 1.14 - Payment Terms: 1.14.2: “Security deposit shall be deducted from each running bill and the final bill to the extent of 10% of the gross amount payable subject to the maximum limit specified.”</td>
<td>Clause 1.14 - Payment Terms: 1.14.2: &quot;Security deposit shall be deducted in such form as per provisions contained in CPWD from 7/8 as amended from time to time&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Clause 3.4.2 - Scope: Para (e): &quot;Any special block required for neatly housing the connector in batten wiring system.&quot;</td>
<td>Clause 3.4.2 - Scope: Para (e): Deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Para (j): New para added.</td>
<td>Para (j): New para to be added as under: &quot;Interconnecting wiring between switches within the switch box on the same circuit&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 4.     | Clause 3.4.5 - Point wiring for socket outlet points: Para (l): The light (6A) point and power (16A) point wiring shall be measured on linear basis, from the respective tapping point of live cable, namely, switch box, another socket outlet point or the sub-distribution board as the case may be, till to the socket outlet. | Clause 3.4.5 - Point wiring for socket outlet points: Para (l): Plug added in line one between the words "The light" and "(6A) point". The para shall now be read as under: The light plug (6A) point and power (16A) point wiring shall be measured on linear basis, from the respective tapping point of live cable, namely, switch box, another socket outlet point, or the
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause 3.10 - Capacity of circuits</th>
<th>Clause 3.10 - Capacity of circuits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Para (i)</strong>: Lighting circuit shall feed light/fan/call bell points.</td>
<td><strong>Para (i)</strong>: Add <em>whatever is less</em> at the end of the para.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Each circuit shall not have more than 800 Watt connected load or more than 10 points.</td>
<td>Lighting circuit shall feed light/fan/call bell points. Each circuit shall not have more than 800 Watt connected load or more than 10 points <em>whatever is less</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause 3.11 - Socket outlets</th>
<th>Clause 3.11 - Socket outlets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Para (ii)</strong>: 3 pin, 16 Amp 3 pin or 16/6 Amp 6 pin sockets will not be permitted.</td>
<td><strong>Para (ii)</strong>: <em>Modular type</em> added in line one between &quot;socket outlets&quot; and &quot;shall be&quot;. The para shall now be read as under: <em>Socket outlets, modular type shall be 6A 3 pin, 16 Amp 3 pin or 16/6 Amp 6 pin 5 pin socket outlets will not be permitted.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause 4.2.3 - Outlets</th>
<th>Clause 4.2.3 - Outlets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Para (ii)(a)</strong>: Outlet boxes shall be of one of the sizes covered in the Schedule of Rates (Elect.) Part 4 Internal 1994/2004.</td>
<td><strong>Para (ii)(a)</strong>: Delete 200% from end of the line: Outlet boxes shall be of one of the sizes covered in the Schedule of Rates (Elect.) Part 4 Internal 1994. In turn see sect 4.1 line based on 30%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Table IX at page: 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Clause 8.14.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Fig. 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Para (II): Plate electrode shall be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and distance 1.5m below the ground level. The installation as shown in Fig. 12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sl. No.</td>
<td>Existing Provision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Fig. 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Modifications made in following items:
Depth from GL to Top of plate: 1.5 m

Modifications made as below:
Depth from GL to Top of plate: 3.0 m

This issues with the approval of CE(E)DR.

SUPERINTENDING ENGINEER (E) S&S